

CAESAR'S
BELLUM GALLICUM

WITH NOTES.

JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.

THE YORK CLASSICAL COMPANY, LTD.,
TORONTO.

100
50

John Wrightman

Classical Text-Book Series

CAESAR'S
BELLUM GALLICUM,

(B. I., CHAPTERS I.-XXXIII.)

WITH

INTRODUCTORY NOTICES, NOTES AND COMPLETE VOCABULARY,

FOR THE USE OF

CLASSES READING FOR DEPARTMENTAL AND UNIVERSITY
EXAMINATIONS.

BY

JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.,

HEAD MASTER, ST. CATHARINES COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE.

TORONTO :
THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED,
9 FRONT STREET WEST.

1887.

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand
eight hundred and eighty-seven, by THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED,
Toronto, Ontario, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

P R E F A C E .

The present edition is designed to meet the wants of students reading for Second Class Certificates and University Pass Matriculation. The notes have been purposely made copious and full. When it is remembered that Vergil is usually put into the hands of a school boy at a very early period of the course, and that the Aeneid is really a difficult book for a junior pupil, no apology need be offered for the assistance given in this edition. The object of the notes is principally to explain the grammatical difficulties that occur. The latest edition of Harkness's Latin Grammar (Standard Edition of 1881) is referred to. In regard to Orthography, though some forms not usually met with in ordinary editions have been introduced, the readings of Ribbeck have not, as a whole, been adopted. The pupil would be puzzled if we were to read e. g. *omnis* (acc. pl.) in one line, and *omnes* in the next, for the same case. The letter *j* throughout has also been retained. Pupils will never learn to appreciate Vergil, if teachers bother them with nice questions of Latin orthography, which, in many cases, are still in dispute.

The editions of Conington, Kennedy and Greenough have been consulted in preparing the notes for this edition.

St. Catharines, January 1st, 1888.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2009 with funding from
Ontario Council of University Libraries

P R E F A C E .

This Edition is similar to the others of the same series of Classical Texts. While attempting to avoid giving too much help, the Editor has never refrained from assisting the Student in all passages in need of explanation. The grammatical references have been made very full. The only way to teach Latin Syntax is through the living language, and this can be successfully done if the Student carefully and studiously gets up the references to the grammar and applies them to the examples in the Text.

ST. CATHARINES COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE,

May 30th, 1887.

I.

LIFE OF CAESAR.

Caius Julius Caesar¹ was born on the 12th of July, B. C. BIRTH. 100.² He was thus six years younger than Cicero and Pompey. His family (*gens Julia*) was not merely one of the oldest, but *His family* was also one of the most respected of the patrician families of the capital. It traced its descent to Iulus, son of Aeneas, and thus through Venus claimed to be of divine origin. It also embraced among its members many who distinguished themselves in the service of the state.

Little is known of Caesar's father, except that he held at some time or other the office of *praetor*, and that he died suddenly at *Caesar's father.* Pisa, B.C. 84. The education of young Caesar seems to have been directed chiefly by his mother, *Aurelia*, who was a woman of lofty ambition and a firm believer in the noble destiny of her son. His early training, according to the fashion of that day, consisted in acquiring a knowledge of numbers, grammar, music, and in practising physical exercises. He is also said to have devoted considerable time to verse making.³

¹ Each Roman citizen had usually *three names*: called the *praenomen* (marking the *individual*), the *nomen* (designating the *gens* or *clan*), and the *cognomen* (telling the *family*). Thus Caius is a *praenomen*, Julius is a *nomen*, and Caesar, a *cognomen*. Sometimes an *agnomen* was added for honorary distinction as *Africanus* to P. Cornelius Scipio.

² Mommsen (Hist. of Rome, Vol. III., 15,) argues that Caesar was born 102 B.C. His main reason for assigning this date is that the *lex annalis*, which prescribed the minimum age at which a citizen could hold certain offices, was observed in Caesar's case. By this law no one could hold the quaestorship before he was 34, the aedileship before 37, the praetorship before 41, the consulship before 43. By referring to the chronological table the plausibility of the argument would appear. In answer to this we may say that: (1) the law was not always observed; (2) Suetonius represents Caesar as 16 years of age when his father died; (3) Plutarch, Suetonius and Appian, state that Caesar was 56 years of age when he was assassinated.

³ *Laudes Herculis* and *Oedipus* were among his youthful poems.

*Related to
Marius.*

His aunt Julia was married to C. Marius. To this relationship may be ascribed the fact that Caesar at the early age of 14 was appointed to the office of priest of Jove (*flamen dialis*), by virtue of which he was a member of the sacred college and received a handsome income. We may also ascribe to his connection with Marius the bent of his political opinions. Caesar after the death of the great dictator led the popular or democratic party as opposed to the senatorial or aristocratic party.

*Betrothed to
Cossutia.*

He was at first betrothed to Cossutia, a wealthy heiress, but he broke off the engagement on the death of his father. In the following year (83 B.C.), he married Cornelia, daughter of L. Cornelius Cinna, the leader of the popular party and the avowed opponent of Sylla. This union was displeasing to Sylla, who ordered Caesar to divorce Cornelia. This Caesar refused to do. Through the intercession of Aurelius Cotta, Caesar was at length pardoned.

*Marries
Cornelia.*

*Goes to the
East, and
serves his
first cam-
paign.*

In consequence of having thwarted the will of Sylla, Caesar incurred his enmity and found it unsafe to remain at Rome. He went to the East, and served his first campaign under M. Minucius Thermus. He seems to have remained in the East for about four years, distinguishing himself for personal bravery at the siege of Mitylene and in the war against the Cilician pirates. On the report of Sylla's death, 78 B.C., he came home.

*Returns
home.*

*Tactics of
Caesar.*

The tactics that Caesar adopted at this time to further the interests of his party showed his consummate skill as a political leader. The Roman Senate had become utterly powerless to deal with the duty of administering properly the government. The lower classes thronged with turbulent crowds the cities, in consequence of the free labour of the Italian provincials being in a great measure supplanted by slave labour. Ever since the days of the Gracchi opposed to this democratic element was the Senate, conservative in its nature, being composed of men whose interests were likely to suffer if the democratic element should get any power in the state. In the midway between these two forces we have the wealthy class led by such men as Crassus, without any aristocratic antecedents, on the one hand opposed to democracy as men of affluence naturally are, and on the other opposed to the old families who simply prided themselves in having their descent through a long line of ancestors. In fact the history of Rome from the middle of the second century, B.C., down to the time of Augustus, presents little more than

*Composition
of the
Senate.*

*The three
parties at
Rome.*

the intrigues of wily politicians who by unscrupulousness endeavoured to supplant each other in the favour of the people. Caesar attempted to show that the Senatorial government of the provincials was thoroughly corrupt. He indicted Cn. Dolabella (78 B. C.) and C. Antonius (77 B. C) for extortion. Though Caesar lost these causes, he really gained a triumph, since he proved the utter corruption of the courts which were filled by the Senatorial faction. To improve his style in oratory, he went to the school of Molo, at Rhodes. On the voyage thither Caesar's vessel was captured by pirates at Pharmacussa (now *Fermaco*), one of the Sporades. He was detained for forty days, and was not released till a ransom of \$50,000 had been paid. During his detention, he is said to have joined with these marauders in their sports, and to have jestingly told them that he would, when liberated, have them crucified. This threat he afterwards made good. Landing at Miletus, he collected a small fleet, captured them, and brought them to Pergamus, where they were executed. He stayed at the school of Molo for two years.

*Caesar
indicts
Dolabella
and
Antonius*

*Goes to
Rhodes.*

*Captured
by pirates*

When absent from Rome, Caesar was elected *pontifex*. This office could be held only by one residing in the capital, and thus he was compelled to return. A reaction had meanwhile set in opposed to the policy of Sylla. With the Consulship of Pompey and Crassus (70 B. C.) a reform had been introduced by restoring the rights of the tribunes and the censors, and by remodelling the Senate. Both Pompey and Caesar supported these reforms. In 68 B. C., Caesar became *quaestor*, and by virtue of this office he was entitled to a seat in the Senate. He went soon after his election with Antistius Vetus into Spain, and took up his residence at *Corduba* (now *Cordova*). One of the chief duties of the *quaestor* was to attend the provincial assizes (*conventus*), and settle the disputes that arose between provincials. In this office he displayed a spirit of equity and moderation in striking contrast to the policy of his predecessors. His popularity gained for him many adherents, who, in after days, flocked to his standard at the battle of Munda. It was during this year that he lost his wife Cornelia.

*Elected
pontifex.*

*Reaction
against
Sulla's
policy.*

*Elected
quaestor.*

Caesar married Pompey's cousin, Pompeia, in the following year. No doubt this union was concluded for political reasons. Pompey was now in the height of his fame. This very year he was appointed by the Gabinian law (*lex Gabinia*) sole com-

*Marries
Pompeia.*

mander of the Roman fleet to clear the coasts of the Mediterranean of the pirates who invested it. Next year he was equally successful in defeating Mithridates, king of Armenia.

*Elected
curule
aedile.*

In 65 B. C., Caesar was elected *curule aedile*. While holding this office, he increased his popularity, as well as his debts, by the costly gladiatorial shows he gave to gratify the depraved tastes of a Roman populace. He also showed his devotion to the memory of Marius by causing the trophies of that great commander, which had been destroyed by Sylla, to be replaced. Many a veteran, reading the inscriptions recounting the victories of Campi Faudii, Aquae Sextiae, and over Jugurtha, would recall the memory of the greatest soldier of the age, the deliverer of Italy, and the sturdy supporter of popular rights. In the year 63 B. C., a year noted for the conspiracy of Catiline, Caesar became *pontifex maximus*. On the trial of the conspirators, Caesar advocated the penalty of perpetual banishment, while Cato advocated the death penalty. Subsequent events proved that Caesar was right.

*Elected
praetor.*

*Propraetor
of Spain.*

*First Tri-
umvirate.*

*Julia,
Caesar's
daughter,
married to
Pompey.*

*Goes to
Gaul.*

In 62 B. C., Caesar was elected *praetor*, and while in this office he openly opposed the party of the Senate. On resigning the office, he went as *propraetor* to Spain, when he managed to gain money enough to pay off his enormous debts. On his return, he united with Pompey and Crassus to form the coalition called the *First Triumvirate*. Pompey may be said to have been the representative of the aristocratic classes, Caesar of the democratic, while Crassus was an exponent of the moneyed party. In the next year Caesar was Consul. To further cement the union, Pompey married Julia, Caesar's daughter. During his Consulship he brought up several reforms, especially a bill for the division of the lands among the people. Before laying down his Consulship he procured the passage of a bill by which he was invested for *five* years with proconsular power over the Gauls and Illyricum.

*Gaulic
campaigns.*

Nine years were spent in the subjugation of the Gauls. In the first campaign, Caesar at Bibracte (now *Autun*) drove back the Helvetii who were moving westward, and attempted to subdue Gaul. In the same year he defeated at *Basle* Ariovistus, a German king, who at the instigation of the Arverni and Sequani had been invited to take their part against the Aedui.

B. C. 57.

In the second campaign, Caesar defeated the Belgae at the river Sabis (now *Sambre*).

Caesar in the third campaign broke up a coalition of the tribes *B.C. 56.* of the north-west of Gaul, which had united against him. During this year, he renewed the agreement with Pompey and Crassus, who covenanted that his command should be extended to five years further.

In his fourth campaign, Caesar crossed the Rhine, but remained *B.C. 55.* only eighteen days on the German side. Later on in the same year he crossed over to Britain.

The next campaign was chiefly against Britain, which, how- *B.C. 54.* ever, he only partially subdued, being recalled by a sudden uprising in Gaul.

He in the next campaign crushed the general revolt, under *B.C. 53.* Vercingetorix, of the subject tribes in Gaul. With the fall of Alesia, the power of the Gauls was crushed for ever.

In his eighth campaign, he was complete master of Gaul, *B.C. 52.* having reduced the tribes one after another to subjection.

The last campaign is uneventful. He remained in Cisalpine *B.C. 51.* Gaul, and returned to Transalpine Gaul for a short time in the summer to review his troops.

During Caesar's absence in Gaul, Crassus was slain at the *Changes while Caesar was in Gaul.* battle of Carrhae, *B.C. 53.* This really broke up the Triumvirate. Pompey began to view Caesar's career with distrust and alarm. He entered into a league with the aristocracy and the Senate. A demand was finally passed by the Senate that Caesar should disband his legions. This Caesar refused to do, unless Pompey followed the same course. Finally a decree "that the Consuls should provide that the State should receive no hurt," was passed. This order was equivalent to a declaration of war, and was regarded as such by Caesar.

With one legion he crossed the Rubicon, the boundary between *Caesar crosses the Rubicon.* Gaul and Italy. Soon Italy came over to his side. Pompey and the party of the Senate fled to Greece. Caesar marched to Spain, defeated the party of Pompey at *Ilerda*, and took Massalia in Southern Gaul.

Caesar then prepared to follow Pompey. For some time both armies encamped on the Apsus in Illyricum. Finally the decisive battle was fought August 9th, *B.C. 48,* at *Pharsalia.* Though Caesar's forces were but one-half the number of those of Pompey, the superior generalship and the courage of despair won the day, and Pompey's troops were completely routed. Pompey fled to

Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered by an emissary of the king. Caesar followed and became involved in difficulties in settling the succession to the throne.

Thapsus. Soon after he crushed the Pompeian party at the battle of *Thapsus*, in Africa, 46 B.C. Caesar was now the master of the Roman world. He returned to Rome, celebrated his three triumphs, and published a general amnesty to his opponents. He reformed the calendar, and introduced many useful measures for the internal economy of the State.

Munda. In 45 B.C., the two sons of Pompey had collected a force in Spain. Thither Caesar marched, and at *Munda* totally defeated it. The Senate conferred on him nearly all the offices of State, and thus the whole authority was centered in one man.

Death of Caesar. A conspiracy, headed by Brutus and Cassius, was formed against him. They were actuated partly by mistaken patriotic motives, and partly by personal jealousy and hatred. Caesar fell March 15th, 44 B.C., pierced by the daggers of the assassins just as he had entered the Senate house.

Caesar's appearance. Caesar was tall, and of commanding aspect ; his features well marked and prominent ; his complexion fair ; his eyes keen, black, and expressive. In latter life he was bald, which he somewhat concealed by wearing a sort of diadem. His robust frame was inured to hardship, and exhibited remarkable powers of endurance. With regard to dress he was very fastidious. His private life was singularly free from many of the vices of the age.

II.

THE WORKS OF CAESAR.

(1) *Extant* :—

(a) *Commentarii de Bello Gallico*, in seven books. This work contains an account of the conquest of Gaul, from B.C. 58 to B.C. 52. In the first book we have the conquest of the Helvetii mentioned, and in the seventh book the death of Clodius is referred to as lately having taken place. As the death of Clodius happened B.C. 52, we may assume that the events recorded happened between these two dates. An eighth book was added by Aulus Hirtius to complete the events to 51 B.C.

(b) *Commentarii de Bello Civili*, in three books. This gives an account of the civil wars down to the time of the

Alexandrine war. The history of the Alexandrine, African, and Spanish campaigns were afterwards added. Hirtius probably wrote the account of the Alexandrine campaign; Oppius, that of the African; the account of the Spanish war was written probably by a centurion of Caesar's army, according to Niebuhr, who discovers a change in style and expression from that of the other two accounts.

(2) *Lost Works* :—

(a) *Anticato*. A reply to Cicero's panegyric on Cato Uticensis, who fell at Thapsus, B.C. 46.

(b) *De Analogia*, or as Cicero calls it, *De Ratione Latine loquendi*. Dedicated to Cicero, and written when Caesar was crossing the Alps.

(c) *Libri Auspiorum* or *Auguralia*. Published B.C. 63, when Caesar was *Pontifex maximus*.

(d) *De Astris*. Published also B.C. 63.

(e) *Apothegmata*, or *Dicta Collectanea*. A collection of witticisms made at different times.

(f) *Poemata*; nearly all written in his youth. To these belong *Oedipus*, *Laudes Herculis*, and *Iter* (describing his journey from Spain, B.C. 46).

III.

THE CONQUEST OF GAUL.

In the year 600 B.C., the Greeks of Phocaea, in Asia Minor, *Greek* emigrated and settled at Massilia (now *Marseilles*). *settlement.* On the conquest of Asia Minor by Cyrus, the Great, many of their countrymen joined the Phocaeans; and soon the young Greek colony rose to power. The inhabitants of Massilia became the leaders in learning and commerce, and established colonies along the neighbouring coast of the Mediterranean. As the Greek colonies encroached on the wild barbarians, wars naturally arose. In 154 B.C., the Ligurians besieged Antipolis and Nicaea, two dependencies of Massilia, when the Massiliots called in the aid of the Romans, by whose aid the Ligurians were *Romans.* defeated, and part of the territory of the Ligurians given to the Massiliots. Another attack soon after (125 B.C.) was made by the Ligurians, who were reduced a second time. The army of C. Sextius Calvinus, after three campaigns, plundered their territory, and reduced the inhabitants to slavery. Near Massilia,

*Aquae
Sextiae.*

Feuds.

he founded the town of *Aquae Sextiae* (now *Aix*), which obtained its name from the hot *springs* of the neighbourhood. About this time, the Aedui and Allobroges were at war. The Arverni, the most powerful of the Gallic tribes, aided the Allobroges, while the Aedui concluded a treaty with the Romans. In 121 B.C., Cn. Domitius defeated the Allobroges at Vindalium, a little above *Avignon*; and in the same year the Gallic confederates were defeated by the united armies of Cn. Domitius and Q. Fabius Maximus, near the junction of the Isere and the Rhone. The country of the Allobroges was reduced to a Roman province, and received the name *Provincia*. Massilia, however, still retained her independence. Within the next succeeding years, the Romans enlarged the boundaries of the original Provincia, which extended at first from the Alps to the Rhone, by reducing that portion of Gaul from the Rhone to the Pyrenees, thus keeping open the road to Spain.

*Cimbri and
Teutones.*

*Successive
defeats of the
Romans.*

In 113 B.C. the whole of Italy was thrown into consternation by the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones. After wandering about the Northern Italy, they entered Gaul and attacked the Roman Province. In 109 B.C. they defeated the Consul, M. Junius Silanus. The Romans sustained another defeat two years later when they attempted to keep back the Tugurini, one of the Helvetic cantons who were attempting to enter Gaul. In this battle fell L. Piso, the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law. In 106 B.C., Q. Servilius Caepio sacked Toulouse, which had formed a league with the Cimbri and Teutones. This temporary gain was followed by a crushing defeat inflicted on the Romans near the banks of the Rhone by the Cimbri and Teutones.

*Cimbri and
Teutones
separate.*

The Cimbri separated from the Teutones and laid waste all the land between the Rhone and the Pyrenees. While the Teutones remained on the East of the Rhone, the Cimbri turned back from the Pyrenees, joined the Teutones, and then passed the Alps. Marius, who had gained great glory in the Jugurthine war, was sent against the invaders. He hastened to Southern

*Defeat of
Teutones
and Cimbri.*

Gaul, and defeated the Teutones at *Aquae Sextiae*, 102 B.C. In the following year he met the Cimbri at *Vercellae* and crushed them in battle.

During the civil war, Sertorius, a follower of Marius, stirred up the Aquitani to revolt. The revolt, however, was unimportant. During the Consulship of Cicero, Catiline attempted to carry out his nefarious conspiracy. He and his associates

*Intrigues of
Catiline.*

attempted to gain over the deputies of the Allobroges, who were on some mission at Rome, to join the conspiracy. These deputies betrayed the proposals to the Consul. The Allobroges not being successful in their mission, and perhaps instigated by the representations of Catiline, took up arms and defeated Manlius Lentulus. In a second battle, however, they were defeated by Pomptinus.

The Aedui, proud of their alliance with Rome, began to lord it over the other tribes. The Sequani formed an alliance with the Arverni. These two tribes invited Ariovistus, a German, to assist them against the Aedui. Soon the Aedui were reduced to submission. Their chief, Divitiacus, went to Rome, and implored the aid of the Senate. The Sequani meanwhile found out that Ariovistus from being an ally turned to be their master. He demanded a third part of the territory of the Sequani, and being refused, defeated them in battle at Magetobriga. After this he ruled them with unbearable insolence.

In B.C. 60, a report reached Rome that the Helvetii, like the Cimbri and Teutones, were preparing for a grand emigration.

The plan was under the direction of Orgetorix, a wealthy Helvetian noble. Seeing the fertile plains of Gaul, they were dissatisfied with their own land. In the previous year a decree had been passed at Rome, that the Governor of Gaul for the time being should protect the allies of the Roman people. In the next year 59 B.C., Julius Caesar was Consul. During his Consulship, P. Vatinius proposed a law giving Caesar the government of Gaul and Illyricum for five years. Caesar's object was to complete the conquest of Gaul. He remained at Rome till after the exile of Cicero. Soon after this B.C. 58, he hastily set out for Gaul, on the report that the Helvetii were on the move westward.

IV.

THE ROMAN ARMY.

In ancient times of Rome, the army was drawn in a solid mass (*phalanx*), a method very common among the Macedonians, and perhaps derived from them. Camillus (circa, 390 B.C.) is said to have broken up the *phalanx* into smaller bodies, called *manipuli*, capable of acting independently and also in concert. The whole legion was arranged in three lines. In the first (*hastati*) were the youngest men, in the second (*principes*) were

men in the full vigor of life, and in the third (*triarii*) were the veterans. Each line contained *ten manipuli*, arranged in the following fashion :

Hastati: — — — — — — — — — —
Principes: — — — — — — — — — —
Triarii: — — — — — — — — — —

Each *manipulus* of the two first lines contained two *centuriae*, each commanded by a *centurio*. The centurian commanding the right century of the manipuli was styled *centurio prior*, the one commanding the left century, *centurio posterior*. Light armed troops (*velites*) were attached, twenty, to each century. Thus we have :

<i>Hastati</i> :	10 manipuli,	120 men=20 centuries,	60 men=	1,200
<i>Principes</i> :	10 "	120 " =20 "	60 " =	1,200
<i>Triarii</i> :	10 "	60 " =20 "	30 " =	600
	—	—	—	—
	30		60	3,000
		To every century, 20 velites=		1,200
				4,200

This was the *triplex acies* referred to so often by Caesar. To each legion were attached 10 *turma*, or squadrons of cavalry of 30 men each, each *turma* being sub-divided into *three decuriae* of 10 men each; each *decuria* was headed by an officer called *decurio*.

To Caesar or Marius is ascribed the custom of drawing up the legion of cohorts. Each legion, when complete, had regularly 6,000 men, divided into 10 cohorts (*cohortes*), each cohort divided into 3 maniples (*manipuli*), and each manipule into two centuries (*centuriae*). The spear (*hasta*) was given to the *triarii*, who also seem to have been armed with the pike (*pilum*). Hence the two first lines were sometimes called *ante-pilani*.

Officers. The officers of the army were :

Centurions. (a) *Centurions (Centuriones)*: These were the leaders of the centuries, two in each manipule, six in each cohort, and sixty in each legion. There was a regular system of promotion in the Roman army. The highest centurion was the first centurion of the first manipule of the first cohort, so the lowest would be the second centurion of the third

maniple of the tenth cohort. As a badge of authority the centurions carried a staff.

- (b) *Military Tribunes (Tribuni Militum)*: These were six *Tribunes*, to each legion: hence ten centurions were under each tribune.
- (c) *Lieutenants (Legati)*: These were next the general in *Legati* command. The cavalry were under the command of the *præfecti equitum* and *decuriones*.

The *weapons* of a Roman soldier were of two kinds:

- (1) *Offensive weapons*. The ordinary soldier (*miles legionarius*) *Arms*, was armed with (a) *the javelin*. Of this there were four kinds: *pilum*, *jaculum*, *hasta*, *lancea*. The *pilum* was a strong heavy pike, consisting of a square shaft of wood four feet long, to the end of which was a strong sharp iron point about two feet long attached. The *jaculum* was a lighter dart used for hurling, while the *hasta* was a long spear used for stabbing. The *lancea* was a light spear with a broad point. The infantry used the *pilum*, while the cavalry and light armed troops, the *jaculum*, *hasta*, and *lancea*. Some of the latter carried bows (*arcus*, and arrows (*sagittæ*), slings (*fundæ*).
- (b) *The sword (gladius)* was short, broad, double-edged and pointed more used for stabbing than for slashing. It was kept in a light scabbard fastened to a belt (*balteus*).
- (2) *Defensive weapons*. The soldier of the legion had: (a) *a brazen helmet (cassis)*, surmounted with a crest; (b) *a cuirass (lorica)*, made of leather, or of strips of metal fastened on the leather, or of metallic scales, or of brazen plates; (c) *greaves (ocreae)*, reaching as high as the knee; (d) *a shield*, either oblong, made of boards, covered with leather and surrounded with a broad metallic rim (*scutum*), or made of bronze and of an oval shape (*clipeus*). The light armed troops had a small buckler (*parma*) and a helmet of leather (*galea*). The soldier had beneath his armour his tunic (*tunica*), a thick, woollen under-garment reaching nearly to the knees. His cloak (*sagum*) was of heavy, woollen stuff, fastened by a brooch on the shoulder, and open in front. The cloak of the general was called *paludamentum*.

Standards. The standards of the Roman army were: (a) *Aquila*, or eagle, the standard of the legion. This was of gold, silver, or bronze, with expanded wings. It was generally borne by the first centurion (*primipilus*). To lose the eagle was a great disgrace. The standard of the maniples was called (b) *signum*, and was of various designs, sometimes a wolf, dog, horse, serpent, figure of victory, &c. (c) The *vexillum* was a square or oblong banner carried by the cavalry.

Musical instruments. The *musical instruments* of the army were: (a) *tuba*, trumpet, was straight, and deep-toned. This was used for the signals of advance and retreat for infantry; (b) *cornu* and *buccina* were crooked, and had a shriller note, and generally used to indicate a change of watch; (c) *lituus*, was formed like an augur's staff, and used for cavalry.

V.

THE ARMY ON THE MARCH.

The army on the march may be divided into three divisions: (a) *agmen primum*, or van; (b) *exercitus*, *agmen legionum*, or main body; (c) *agmen novissimum*, or rear. The van was generally composed of light armed troops of infantry or cavalry. Their chief duty was to find out the force of the enemy, or to hold the enemy at bay until the main body should arrive. The main body with the baggage train (*impedimenta*), followed. The rear generally consisted of cavalry or light armed troops.

The average march (*iter justum*) was from six to seven hours, or from fifteen to twenty miles a day. On the forced march the soldiers often covered fifty miles a day.

On the march, the soldiers carried two Roman pecks of grain (*frumentum*), cooking utensils (*vasa*), his arms, blanket, and two rampart stakes (*valli*). The private baggage of the soldier was called *sarcinae*.

VI.

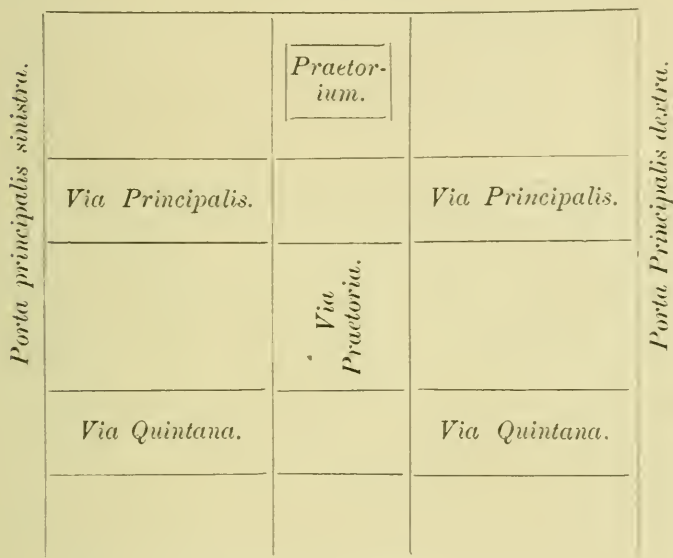
THE ARMY IN CAMP.

When the army was on the march, men (*metatores*) were sent forward to select a suitable place for a camp. If possible, a high ground (*locus superior*) was sought.

The camp was usually square or oblong. An embankment (*vallum*), formed from the ground thrown up from trench (*fossa*), surrounded the camp. The camp had four gates: (1) *porta praetoria*, near the praetorium, or general's tent, faced the

enemy ; (2) *porta decumana* was opposite to this ; (3) *porta principalis sinistra* on the left ; and (4) *porta principalis dextra* on the right. Connecting these two latter gates was the *via principalis*, and parallel to the street was the *via quintana*. Connecting the *porta praetoria* and *porta decumana* was the *via praetoria*.

Porta Praetoria.



Porta Decumana.

The pickets were generally called *excubitores* ; *vigiliae* were night watches ; *custodiae* were sentinels to guard some particular post.

The average pay was about $6\frac{1}{4}$ cents per day. Caesar doubled this. A centurion received 25 cents a day. Besides their regular pay Caesar often gave them the money that accrued from the sale of booty.

C. JULII CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO
COMMENTARIORUM

LIBER PRIMUS.

I. ¹GALLIA est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum ²unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, ³qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli, appellantur. Hi omnes ⁴lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis ⁵Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, ⁶propterea quod a ⁷cultu atque humanitate ⁸provinciae longissime absunt, ⁹minimeque ad eos ¹⁰mercatores saepe comitant, atque ea, ¹¹quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important; ¹²proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, ¹³quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Qua de causa Helvetii ¹⁴quoque reliquos Gallos ¹⁵virtute praecedunt, quod fere quotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, quum aut suis ¹⁶finibus ¹⁷eos prohibent, aut ipsi in ¹⁸eorum finibus bellum gerunt. ¹⁹Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, ²⁰initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; ²⁰vergit ad septentriones. Belgae ab ²¹extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ²²ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in septentriones et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem Oceani, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter ²³occasum solis et septentriones.

II.—Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ¹ditissimus fuit ²Orgetorix. Is, ³Marco Messala et Marco Pisone consulibus, ⁴regni cupiditate inductus, ⁵conjunctionem nobilitatis fecit; et ⁶civitati persuasit, ⁷ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: ⁸perfacile esse,

quum virtute omnibus ⁹praestarent, ¹⁰totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id ¹¹hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique ¹²loci natura Helveti, continentur : una ex parte flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, ¹³qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit : altera ex parte monte Jura altissimo qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios ; tertia, ¹⁴lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui Provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. ¹⁵His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur, et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent : ¹⁶qua de causa homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur. ¹⁷Pro multitudine autem hominum, et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem millia passuum ducenta et quadraginta, in latitudinem centum et octoginta, patebant.

III.—His rebus adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, ¹constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum ²pertinerent, comparare ; jumentorum et ³carrorum ⁴quam maximum numerum coemere ; ⁵sementes quam maximas facere, ⁶ut in itinere copia frumenti suppetere ; cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. ⁷Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt ; ⁸in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere ⁹persuadet Castico, Catamantedis filio, Sequano, cujus pater ¹⁰regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat et a senatu populi Romani ¹¹amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua ¹²occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat ; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate ¹³obtinebat, ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium ¹⁴dat. ¹⁵Perfacile factu esse, illis probat, conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset ; ¹⁶non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent : ¹⁷se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum confirmat. Hac oratione adducti, inter se ¹⁸fidem et jusjurandum dant, ¹⁹et, regno occupato, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

IV.—¹Ea res ut Helvetiis ²per indicium enuntiata ³moribus suis Orgetorigem ⁴ex vinculis causam dicere coegerunt : ⁵damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. ⁶Die constituta causae dictionis, Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam ⁷familiam, ⁸ad homi-

num millia decem, undique coegit; et omnes⁹clientes, obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit: ¹⁰per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit. Quum civitas, ob eam rem incitata, armis ¹¹jus suum exsequi ¹²conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est: ¹³neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

V.—Post ejus mortem ¹nihilo minus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur, ²ut e finibus suis exeant. Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, ³oppida sua omnia numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia ⁴incendant; frumentum omne, praeter quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt; ⁵ut, ⁶domum reditionis spe sublata, paratiores ⁷ad omnia pericula subeunda ⁸essent: ⁹trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent. Persuadent Rauracis, et Tulingis, et Latobrigis, finitimis, uti, eodem ¹⁰usi consilio, oppidis suis vicisque exustis, una cum iis proficiscantur; ¹¹Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant, et in agrum Noricum transierant ¹²Noreiamque oppugnant, receptos ad se, socios sibi adsciscunt.

VI.—Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus ¹itineribus ²domo exire ³possent: ⁴unum per Sequanos, angustum difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum, ⁵vix qua singuli carri ducerentur; mons autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile perpauca prohibere possent: ⁶alterum per Provinciam nostram, ⁷multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod Helvetiorum inter fines et Allobrogum, qui ⁸nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque ⁹nonnullis locis vado ¹⁰transitur. ¹¹Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est, ¹²proximumque Helvetiorum finibus Genava. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. ¹³Allobrogum sese vel persuasuros, quod nondum ¹⁴bono animo in Populum Romanum viderentur, existimabant; ¹⁵vel vi coacturos, ut per ¹⁶suos fines eos ire ¹⁷paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis, diem dicunt, ¹⁸qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes ¹⁹convenient: is dies erat ²⁰ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles, Lucio Pisone, Aulo Gabinio consulibus.

VII.—Caesari quum id ¹nuntiatum esset, ²eos per Provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ³ab urbe proficisci, et, ⁴quam

maximis potest itineribus, in ⁵Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad Genavam pervenit. ⁷Provinciae toti quam maximum militum numerum imperat—erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore ⁸legio una.—pontem, qui erat ad Genavam, jubet rescindi. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii ⁹certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos civitatis, cujus ¹⁰legationis Nameius et Verudoctius principem ocum obtinebant, ¹¹qui dicerent, ¹²sibi esse in animo, sine ullo, maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum: rogare, ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat Caesar, quod ¹³memoria tenebat, Lucium Cassium consulem ¹⁴occisum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et ¹⁵sub jugum missum, ¹⁶concedendum non putabat: ¹⁷neque homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciundi, temperaturos ab injuria et maleficio existimabat. Tamen, ut ¹⁸spatium intercedere posset dum milites, quos imperaverat, ¹⁹convenirent, legatis respondit, ²⁰diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum, ²¹si quid vellent, ante diem Idus Apriles reverterentur.

VIII.—Interea ¹ea legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque, qui ex Provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, ²qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, millia passuum ³decem novem ⁶murum, in altitudinem ⁴pedum sedecim, ⁵fóssamque perducit. Eo opere perfecto, ⁶praesidia disponit, castella communit, ⁷quo facilius, si se invito transire ⁹conarentur, prohibere possit. Ubi ea dies, quam constituerat cum legatis, ¹⁰venit, et legati ad eum ¹¹reverterunt, negat, se more et exemplo Populi Romani posse ¹²iter ulli per provinciam dare; et, si vim facere ¹³conentur, ¹⁴prohibiturum ostendit. Helvetii, ea ¹⁵spe dejecti, ¹⁶navibus junctis ratibusque compluribus factis, ¹⁷alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdium, saepius noctu, ¹⁸si perrumpere possent conati, ¹⁹operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi, hoc conatu destiterunt.

IX.—¹Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, ²qua, Sequanis invitis, propter angustias ire non poterant. His quum ³sua sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt, ⁴ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis impetrarent. ⁵Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetiis erat

amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis ⁶filiam in matrimonium duxerat ; et, cupiditate regni adductus, ⁷novis rebus studebat, ⁸et quam plurimas civitates suo sibi beneficio habere obstrictas volebat. Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequanis impetrat, ⁹ut per fines suos ire Helvetios patiantur ; obsidesque uti inter sese dent, perficit : ¹⁰Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios ¹¹prohibeant ; ¹⁰Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuria ¹¹transeant.

X.—Caesari ¹renuntiatur ²Helvetiis esse in animo per agrum Sequanorum et Aeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, ³quae civitas est in Provincia. ⁴Id si fieret, intelligebat magno cum provinciae periculo ⁵futurum, ut homines bellicosos, Populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. Ob eas causas ⁶ei munitioni, quam fecerat, Titum Labienum legatum praefecit : ipse ⁷in Italiam ⁸magnis itineribus contendit, ⁹duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres, quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit ; et qua proximum iter ¹⁰in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. ¹¹Ibi Centrones, et Graioceli, et Caturiges, ¹²locis superioribus occupatis, itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. ¹³Compluribus his proeliis pulsus, ¹⁴ab Ocelo, quod est ¹⁵citerioris provinciae extremum, in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit ; inde in Allobrogum fines : ab Allobrogibus in Segusianos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

XI. Helvetii ¹jam per ²angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias transduxerant, et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros ³populabantur. Aedui, ⁴quum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt ⁵rogatum auxilium : ⁶ita se omni tempore de Populo Romano meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint. Eodem tempore ⁷Aedui Ambarri, ⁸necessarii et consanguinei Aeduorum, ⁹Caesarem certiores faciunt, sese depopulatis agris, non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere : item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt, et demonstrant, ¹⁰sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rebus adductus ¹¹Caesar, non exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis, in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

XII.—¹Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit, ²incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis, in utram partem ³fluat, judicari non ⁴possit. Id Helvetii ⁵ratibus ac lintribus junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est tres jam ⁶copiarum ⁷partes Helvetios id flumen transduxisse, quartem vero partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse; ⁸de tertia vigilio cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus, ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes ⁹aggressus, magnam eorum partem ¹⁰concidit: reliqui fugae sese mandarunt atque ¹¹in proximas silvas abdiderunt. Is ¹²pagus appellabatur ¹³Tigurinus; nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quatuor pagos divisa est. Hic ¹³pagus unus, quum ¹⁴domo exisset, patrum nostrorum ¹⁵memoria, ¹⁶Lucium Cassium consulem interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. ¹⁷Ita, sive casu, sive consilio deorum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem Populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit. Qua in re Caesar non solum publicas, sed etiam privatas injurias ultus est, ¹³quod ejus soceri Lucii Pisonis avum, Lucium Pisonem legatum, Tigurini eodem proelio, quo Cassium, interfecerant.

XIII.—¹Hoc proelio facto, ²reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat, atque ita exercitum transducit. Helvetii, repentino ejus adventu commoti, ³quum id, quod ipsi diebus viginti aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, uno illum die fecisse intelligerent, legatos ad eum mittunt: ⁴cujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, ⁵qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita ⁶cum Caesare agit: ⁷si pacem Populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset: ⁸sin bello persequi perseveraret, ⁹reminisceretur et ¹⁰veteris incommodi Populi Romani et ¹¹pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. ¹²Quod improvise unum pagum adortus esset, quum ii, qui flumen transissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ¹³ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret: se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute, quam dolo aut insidiis, niterentur. ¹⁴Quare ne committeret, us is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate Populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet, aut memoriam proderet.

inbornely upon
cause - cause
repentibus sudden

XIV. ¹His Caesar ita respondit : ²eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret : ³atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito Populi Romani accidissent : ⁴qui si alicujus injuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere ; sed ⁵eo deceptum, quod neque commissum a se ⁶intelligeret, quare timeret ; neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet ; num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod ⁷eo invito iter per Provinciam per vim ⁸tentassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam deponere posse ? ⁹Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloria-
⁶rentur, quodque tamdiu se impune tulisse injurias admirarentur eodem pertinere : ¹⁰consuesse enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. ¹¹Quum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, facturos intelligat, et si Aeduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum. Divico respondit : ¹²ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare, consuerint : ejus rei Populum Romanum esse testem. Hoc reponso dato, decessit.

XV. Postero die castra ex eo loco ¹movent : idem facit Caesar ; equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quatuor millium, ²quem ex omni Provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, ³qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter ⁴faciant. Qui, cupidius ⁵novissimum agmen insequuti, ⁶alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt ; et pauci ⁷de nostris cadunt, Quo proelio sublatis Helvetii, quod quingentis ⁸equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, ⁹audacius subsistere, nonnunquam ex novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessere, coeperunt. Caesar ¹⁰suos a proelio continebat, ¹¹ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis, pabulationibus, populationibusque prohibere. ¹²Ita ¹³dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum ¹⁴non amplius quinque aut sex millibus passuum interesset.

XVI. ¹Interim quotidie Caesar ²Aeduos frumentum, ³quod essent publice polliciti, ⁴flagitare ⁵ : nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub

septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat : ⁶eo autem frumento, quod flumine Arare navibus subvexerat, propterea uti minus poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat. ⁷Diem ex die ducere Aedui ; conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. Ubi⁸ se diutius duci intellexit, ⁹et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret : ¹⁰convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratu praeerat —quem Vergobretum appellant Aedui, qui creatur annuus, et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem¹¹—graviter eos accusat, quod, quum neque emi, neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevetur ; ¹²praesertim quum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit : multo etiam gravius, quod sit destitutus, queritur.

¹XVII. Tum demum Liscus, oratione Caesaris adductus. ¹quod antea tacuerat, proponit : ²esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat ; qui privati plus possint, quam ipsi magistratus. ³Hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant, quod praestare debeant. Si jam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallorum, quam Romanorum imperia perferre, satius esse, ⁴neques dubitae debere, quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Aeduis libertatem sint erepturi. Ab iisdem nostra consilia, ⁵quaeque in castris gerantur, hostibus enuntiari : hos ⁶a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam, ⁷quod necessario rem coactus Caesari enuntiarit, intelligere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quamdiu potuerit, tacuisse.

XVII. ¹Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentibat : ²sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet : ³quaerit ex solo ea, quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius ⁴Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit ; reperit⁵ esse vera. ⁶Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum : ⁷complures annos portoria, reliquaque omnia Aeduorum vectigalia, parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. ⁸His

portorium. tolli redemptum
pretium. (sive) accor-eri. dicitur

rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse, et facultates ad largiendum magnas comp^oasse; magnum numerum equitatus ⁹suo sumpte semper alere et circum se habere: ¹⁰neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse: atque hujus potentiae causa matrem in Biturigibus, homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo, collocasse; ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere: sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse: ¹¹favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem: ¹²odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia ejus diminuta, Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. ¹³Si quid accadat Romanis, summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire; ¹⁴imperio Populi Romani non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea, quam habeat, gratia desperare. ¹⁵Reperiebat etiam inquirendo Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium ejus fugae factum a Dumnorige atque ejus equitibus nam equitatu, quem ¹⁶auxilio Caesari Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat, eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

XIX.--¹Quibus rebus cognitis, ²quum ad has suspensiones certissimae res accederent, ³quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios transduxisset, ⁴quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, quod ea omnia ⁵non modo injussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod ⁶a magistratu Aeduorum accusaretur: satis esse ⁷causae arbitrabatur, ⁸quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet. ⁹His omnibus rebus ¹⁰unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in Populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: ¹¹nam, ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verebatur. Itaque ¹²priusquam quicquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet et, ¹³quotidianis interpretibus remotis, per Caium Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem suum, ¹⁴cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur. ¹⁵simul commonefacit, quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit: ¹⁶petit atque hortatur, ut sine ejus offensione animi vel ipse de eo, causa cognita, statuatur, vel civitatem statuere jubeat.

XX.—Divitiacus¹ multis cum ¹lacrimis, Caesarem complexus, obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret : ²scire se illa esse vera, nec quenquam ex eo ³plus, quam se, doloris capere, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset : ⁴quibus opibus ac nervis, non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur : sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. ⁵Quod si quid ei Caesare gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum, non sua voluntate factum ; ⁶qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. Haec quum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare ⁷peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prendit ; consolatus rogat, finem orandi ⁸faciat ; ⁹tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et reipublicae injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ae precibus condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat ; ¹⁰fratrem adhibet ; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit : quae ipse intelligat, quae civitas queratur, proponit ; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes ¹¹suspiciones vitet ; praeterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut, quae ¹²agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.

XXI.—Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus ¹hostes sub monte consedissee millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo ; ²qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent, misit. Renuntiatum est, ³facilem esse. ⁴De tertia vigilia Titum Labienum, ⁵legatum pro praetore, cum duabus legionibus, et iis ⁶ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubet ; quid sui ⁷consilii sit, ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem ⁸itinere, ⁹quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, ¹⁰qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur, et in exercitu Lucii Sullae, et postea in Marci Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

XXII.—¹Prima luce, quum ²summus mons a Tito Labieno ³teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis ⁴passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis ⁵comperit, aut ipsius adventus, aut Labieni, cognitus esset ; Considius, ⁶equo admisso, ad eum accurrit ; dicit, montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri ; id se a ⁷Gallicis armis atque insignibus cog-

*comperit - 4th learn
jugum: ridge*

Subduco. Lawoff
perfungo - ere - frangi fractum
DE BELLO GALLICO COMM. I. 11
breakthrough

novisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem ⁹subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ¹⁰ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare, ne proelium ¹¹committeret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra ¹²visae essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros exspectabat ¹³proelioque abstinebat. ¹⁴Multo denique die ¹⁵per exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem a suis teneri, et Helvetios castra movisse, et Considium, timore perterritum, quod non vidisset, ¹⁶proviso sibi renuntiasset. Eo die, quo consuerat ¹⁷intervallo, hostes sequitur, ¹⁸millia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

XXIII.—¹Pyostri die ejus diei, ²quod omnino biduum supererat, quum exercitu frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte, oppido Aeduum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non ⁴amplius millibus passuum octodecim aberat, ⁵rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit, iter ab Helvetiis avertit, ac ⁶Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos Lucii Aemilii, ⁷decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiatur. Helvetii, seu ⁸quod timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magis, quod ⁹pridie, superioribus locis occupatis, proelium non commovissent; (sive eo, ⁹ quod re frumentaria intercludi posse confiderent;) commutato consilio atque itinere converso, nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere coeperunt.

XXIV.—Postquam ¹id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem ²sudducit, equitatumque qui ³sustineret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse ⁴interim in colle medio triplicem aciem nstruxit ⁵legionum quatuor veteranarum, ita, uti supra se in summo jugo duas legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore proxime ⁶conscriperat, et omnia auxilia collocaret; ac totum montem ⁷hominibus compleri, et ⁸interea ⁹sarcinas in unum locum conferri, et eum ab his, qui in superiore acie constiterant, muniri jussit. Helvetii, cum omnibus suis carris sequuti, impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt: ipsi, confertissima acie, rejecto nostro equitatu, ¹¹phalange facta, sub ¹⁰primam nostram aciem successerunt.

XXV.—Caesar primum ¹suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis equis, ut, ²aequato omnium periculo, spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos, ³proelium commisit. Milites, e loco superiore pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfregerunt. ⁴Ea disjecta,

Savina baggag
velum - (avelum)

avo. are shield
cutem - blow colligere hand together
gladiis dstrictis in eos impetum fecerunt. ⁶Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, quod, ⁷pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, ⁸quum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere, neque, sinistra impedita, satis commode pugnare poterant; ⁹multi ut, diu jactato brachio, praeoptarant scutum manu emittere et nudo corpore pugnare. Tandem ¹⁰vulneribus defessi, et pedem referre, et, quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coeperunt. ¹¹Capto monte et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum millibus circiter quindecim agmen hostium ¹²claudabant, et ¹³novissimis praesidio erant ex itinere nostros latere aperto aggressi, circumvenere; et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt. Romani ¹⁴conversa signa bipartito intulerunt: prima, ac secunda acies, ut victis ac summotis resisteret: tertia, ut venientes exciperet.

carus car
XXVI.—Ita ¹ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius quum nostrorum impetus sustinere non possent, ²alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt; alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto proelio, quum ab ³hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. ⁴Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea ⁵quod pro vallo carros objecerant, et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela conjiciebant, et ⁶nonnulli, inter carros rotasque, ⁷mataras ac tragulas subiciebant nostrosque vulnerabant. Diu quum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri ⁸potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia, atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter millia hominum centum et triginta superfuerunt, eaque tota nocte continenter ierunt: ⁹nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso, in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, quum, et propter vulnera militum et propter sepulturam occisorum, nostri, ¹⁰triduum morati, eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas literas nuntiosque misit, ¹¹ne eos frumento neve alia re juvarent: ¹²qui si juvissent, se eodem loco, quo Helvetios, habiturum. Ipse, triduo intermisso, cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

XXVII.—Helvetii, omnium rerum inopia adducti, legatos de deditioe ad eum miserunt. ¹Qui, quum eum in itinere convenissent, seque ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque loquuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco, quo tum essent, suum adven-

poterit get possessione
3000000 burning

deserco-ere scire scitum
inflecto-ere flexi flectum
diaplosto 1st choase
DE BELLO GALLICO COMM. I. *13*

tum expectare jussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. ³Dum ea, conquiruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissa, circiter hominum millia sex ejus ⁴pagi, qui Verbigenus appellatur,—sive timore ⁵perterriti, ne, armis traditis, supplicio afficerentur, sive spe salutis inducti, ⁶quod, in tantā multitudine dedititiorum, suā fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent—prima nocte ex castris Helvetiorum egressi, ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenderunt. *existo- assail vigorously*

XXVIII.—Quod ubi Caesar ¹resciit, ²quorum per fines ierant, his, ³uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse vellent, ⁴imperavit: reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquos omnes, obsidibus, armis, ⁵perfugis traditis, in deditionem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos, ⁶unde erant profecti, ⁷reverti jussit; et quod, omnibus fructibus amissis, ⁸domi nihil erat, quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit, ut iis frumenti copiam facerent; ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incenderant, restituere jussit. Id ea maxime ratione fecit, ⁹quod noluit, eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare; ¹⁰ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent, et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. ¹¹Boios, petentibus Aeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditionem, atque ipsi erant, receperunt. *fero- is f*

XXIX.—In castris Helvetiorum ¹tabulae repertae sunt, ²litteris Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis ³nomina *by nam* ⁴ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent: et item ⁵separatim pueri, senes, mulieresque. *alio.* Quarum omnium rerum ⁶summa erat, capitum Helvetiorum millia ducenta et sexaginta tria. Tulingorum millia triginta sex, Latobrigorum quatuordecim, Rauracorum viginti tria, Boiorum triginta duo: ex his, ⁷qui arma ferre possent, ad millia nonaginta dua. Summa omnium fuerunt ad millia trecenta et sexaginta octo. Eorum, qui domum redierunt, ⁸censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus millium centum et decem.

XXX.—Bello Helvetiorum confecto, ¹totius fere Galliae legati,

complete
enumeration

utulor - ari - atus - to congratulatur

otior - in potius oblatum

principes civitatum, ad Caesarem ²gratulatum convenerunt: ³Intel-
ligere sese, tametsi, pro veteribus Helvetiorum injuriis Populi
Romani, ab iis, poenas bello repetisset, ⁴tamen eam rem non minus
ex usu terrae Galliae, quam Populi Romani accidisse: ⁵propterea
quod eo consilio florentissimis rebus, domos suas Helvetii reli-
quissent, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent, imperioque potirentur,
locumque domicilio ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni
Gallia opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum judicassent, reliquas-
que civitates stipendiarias haberent. ⁶Petierunt, ut sibi concil-
ium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere, idque Caesaris voluntate
facere, liceret: ⁷sese habere quasdam res, quas ex communi con-
sensu ab eo petere vellent. Ea re permissa, diem concilio consti-
tuerunt, ⁸et jurejurando, ne quis enuntiaret, nisi quibus communi
consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

neis - re - sanxi - sanctum confiri

XXXI.—¹Eo concilio dimisso, iidem principes civitatum, qui ante
fuerant ad Caesarem, ²reverterunt, petieruntque, ³uti sibi secreto de
sua omniumque salute cum eo agere liceret. Ea re impetrata,
⁴sese omnes flentes Caesari ad pedes projecerunt: ⁵non minus se
id contendere et laborare, ne ea, quae dixissent, enuntiarentur,
quam uti ea, quae vellent, impetrarent; propterea quod, si enunti-
atum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent. Loquutus
est pro his Divitiacius Aeduus: ⁶Galliae totius factiones esse duas:
harum alterius principatum tenere Aeduos, alterius Arvernos. ⁷Hi
quum tantopere de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent,
factum esse uti ab Arvernīs Sequanisque Germani mercede arces-
serentur. ⁸Horum primo circiter millia quindecim Rhenum tran-
sisse: posteaquam agros, et cultum, et copias Gallorum homines
feri ac barbari adamassent transductos, plures: nunc esse in Gallia
ad centum et viginti millium numerum: ⁹cum his Aeduos eorum-
que clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam cala-
mitatem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum,
omnem equitatum amisisse. ¹⁰Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque
fractos, qui et sua virtute et Populi Romani hospitio atque amicitia
plurimum ante in Gallia potuissent coactos esse Sequanis obsides
dare, nobilissimos civitatis, et ¹¹jurejurando civitatem obstringere,
sese neque obsides repetituros, neque auxilium a Populo Romano
imploratuuros, neque recusatuuros, quominus perpetuo sub illorum
ditione atque imperio essent. ¹²Unum se esse ex omni civitate

abstringo - ere strinx - strictionem
cesso - ere - ut item - unum cultus - us
merces - edes - reward - unum

Aeduorum, qui adduci non potuerit, ut juraret, aut liberos suos obsides daret. Ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse, et Romam ad senatum venisse, auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque jurejurando neque obsidibus teneretur. ¹³Sed pejus victoribus Sequanis, quum Aeduis victis, accidisse: propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset, tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupavisset, et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos decedere juberet; ¹⁴propterea quod, paucis mensibus ante, Harudum millia hominum viginti quatuor ad eum venissent, quibus locus ac sedes pararentur. ¹⁵Futurum esse paucis annis, uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur, atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent: ¹⁶neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro, neque hanc consuetudinem victus cum illa comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ¹⁷ut semel Gallorum copias proelio vicerit—quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobriam—superbe et crudeliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cujusque liberos poscere, ¹⁸et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua res non ad nutum aur ad voluntatem ejus facta sit. ¹⁹hominem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium: non posse ejus imperia diutius sustineri. ²⁰Nisi si quid in Caesare Populoque Romano sit auxilii omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remotas a Germanis, petant, fortunamque, quacumque accadat, experiantur. ²¹Haec sie nuntiata Ariovisto sint, non dubitare, quin de omnibus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sumat. Caesarem vel auctoritate sua atque exercitus, ²²vel recenti victoria, vel nomine Populi Romani detertere posse, ne major multitudo Germanorum Rhenum transducatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti injurio posse defendere.

XXXII.—Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habita, omnes, qui aderant, magno fletu auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt. ²Animadvertit Caesar, unos ex omnibus Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere, quas ceteri facerent; sed ³tristes, capite demisso, terram intueri. Ejus rei causa quae esset, miratus, ex ipsis quaesivit. ⁴Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem tristitia taciti permanere. ⁵Quum ab iis saepius quaereret, neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Divitiacus Aeduus respondit: ⁶Hoc esse miseriorem graviolemque fortunam Sequanorum, prae reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto

intueor - eri - intueus caest egis upam.

quidem queri neque auxilium implorare auderent, absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrerent : ¹propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur ; Sequanis vero, qua intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate ejus essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi. *endure.*

XXXIII.—¹His rebus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit, pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem curae futuram : magnam se habere spem, et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem injuriis facturum. ²Hac oratione habita, concilium dimisit ; et ³secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur, quare sibi eam rem cogitandam et suscipiendam putaret ; in primis ⁴quod Aeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepenumero ab Senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in ditione videbat Germanorum teneri, eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intelligebat : ⁵quod in tanto imperio Populi Romani turpissimum sibi et reipublicae esse arbitrabatur. ⁶Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire, et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire, Populo Romano periculosum videbat : ⁷neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturos existimabat, quin, quum omnem Galliam occupassent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent, in provinciam exirent, atque inde in Italiam contenderent ; ⁸praesertim quum Sequanos a Provincia nostra Rhodanus divideret. Quibus rebus quam maturime occurrendum putabat. ⁹Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumpserat, ut ferendus non videretur.

Handwritten notes:
 1. Ariovistus
 2. concilium
 3. secundum ea
 4. quod Aeduos
 5. quod in tanto imperio
 6. Paulatim autem
 7. neque sibi homines feros
 8. praesertim quum
 9. Ipse autem Ariovistus

NOTES.

CHAPTER I.

¹*Gallia—tres* : “the whole of Gaul is divided into three parts.” *Gallia omnis* is opposed to one of the parts of Gaul inhabited by the *Galli*, or *Celtae*. In this passage Caesar refers to *Gallia Transalpina*, but does not include the *Provincia* (modern *Provence*). According to Zeuss, *Gallia* means “the land of the warriors” : derived from *galla*, a Celtic word signifying “a battle ;” hence *galat*, “a warrior.” According to others, *Celtae* and *Galli* are different forms of the same word and are both probably of Celtic origin. Max Müller says (*Science of Language*, Vol. I, p. 225, note 22) the word *Keltos* may have meant in the ancient language of Gaul, *elevated, upright, proud*, like the Latin *celsus*, and *excelsus*. Hence *Keltae* may possibly be simply “highlanders.” For the interchange of *k* (or *c*) & *g* : cp. : κυβερνήτης, *gubernator*, *knee γόνυ, genu*.—*divisa* is here virtually a predicative adjective expressing the result of the action. H. 550, N. 2 ; A. & G. 291. According to Caesar, the *Belgae* occupied from Seine and Meuse to the Rhine, the *Aquitani* from the Pyrenees to the Garonne, and the *Gauls proper* inhabited the rest of the country with the exception of the Roman province (*Provincia*, modern *Provence*) in the south. Under Augustus *Gallia Transalpina* was divided into *Gallia Narbonensis*, *Aquitania*, *Gallia Lugdunensis*, *Gallia Belgica*. [See *Ancient Atlas*.]

²*unam* : scil. *partem* ; so with *alteram, tertiam* understand *partem*.

³*qui* : i.e. (ii incolunt) *tertiā (partem) qui...appelluntur*.

⁴*lingua*. H. 420 ; A. & G. 248. The Aquitanians spoke the Basque or Iberian language, which is still spoken on both sides of the Pyrenees. According to Tacitus (*Germ.* 28) the *Belgae* regarded themselves Germans rather than Gauls. Still from the names of places belonging to the *Belgae* we may infer that their language was strongly marked by Gallic words.—*differunt* ; conjugate.

⁵*Garumna—Matrona—Sequana* : give modern names. Explain the number of *dividit*. H. 463 II. 3 ; A. & G. 205, b.—Distinguish *mātrōna*, *Mātrōna*.

⁶*propterea quod* = *propter ea quod* : “on account of this, that, &c.,” i.e., “because,” the *ea* being an antecedent of sentence introduced by *quod*.

⁷*cultu—humanitate* : the former refers to the external marks of civilization as dress, food, furniture, &c. ; the latter suggests learning, culture, refinement of manners.

⁸*provinciae*, i.e., the Roman province in Southern Gaul. The word still lives in the modern *Provence*.

⁹*minime—saepe=rarissime* : “very seldom.”

¹⁰*mercatores*: often mentioned by Caesar. The traders were mainly from *Massilia* (Marseilles) and were probably Greeks and Italians who followed the Roman camp. The Helvetii and Belgae lay out of their route.

¹¹*quae—pertinent*: “which tend to weaken their courage;” for the const. of the gerundive: See H. 544, 1; A. & G. 234, a.

¹²*proximique—Germanis*: “and they are next the Germans;” for the const. of *proximus*. H. 391, 1; A. & G. 234, a.

¹³*quibuscum*: See H. 187, 2; A. & G. 104 e.

¹⁴*quoque*: as well as the Belgae, “the Helvetii also.”

¹⁵*virtute*: “in valour;” for the const.: H. 424; A. & G. 253.

¹⁶*finibus*: distinguish in meaning *finis* and *fines*: H. 414; A. & G., 243. The indic. *prohibent*, because *cum* is purely temporal.

¹⁷*eorum, eos*, refer to the Germans.

¹⁸*eorum = horum omnium*: referring to the *hi omnes* above: “one division of their country, which, it is said, the Gauls occupy.” The reference is to the people of Central Gaul.

¹⁹*initium—capita*: “begins at.” Note that Caesar uses the apposition before or after its noun *flumine Rhodano, Garunna flumine*, though in Greek we say ὁ Εὐφράτης ποταμός, τὸ Πήλιον ὄρος.

²⁰*vergit—septentriones*: “it slopes towards the north;” that is, all the rivers of *Gallia* proper as the Loire, Allier, &c., run in a northerly direction.—*septentriones*: the word is used in the singular and in the plural. The two constellations, the *Greater* and *Lesser Bear* were called by the name *triones*. The Greeks called the *Greater Bear* ἀρκτός (*Bear*) and ἀμαζα (*Wain*). This latter constellation consists of *seven* stars, four of which form a quadrangle and the other three lie in a right line attached to the quadrangle. A line drawn through the two extreme stars of the quadrangle passes through the north polar star which is in the constellation of the *Lesser Bear*. The word *trio = strio*: cp. Sans. *tarā*, “stars,” properly “strewers of light;” cp. Eng., *star*; German, *stern*; Lat. *stella* (= *ster-ula*), all from the root *star* (cp. *sterno*) “to scatter.” Varro (L. L. 7, 73) derives the word from *septem* “seven,” *trio = bos* “an ox,” so that according to him the words signify the “seven ploughing oxen.”

²¹*extremis*: compare this adj.

²²*ad*: “at” or “near.”

²³*occasum—septentriones*: the Belgic rivers, the Sambre, Scheldt, &c., run N. E.; those of Aquitania, the Garonne, Adour, N. W.

CHAPTER II.

¹*ditissimus*: compare this word.

²*Orgetorix*: Thierry says the word signifies, “king of a hundred mountains.” Zeuss derives it from *org*, “to slay”; hence, “the slayer.”

³*M.—consulibus*: “in the consulship of M. Messala and M. Piso.” H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255, a. The Romans marked the year by the names of the consuls in office, as the Athenians did by the name of the chief archon (ἀρχων ἐπώνυμος). These were consuls B.C. 61, while Caesar was occupying the province of Spain.

⁴*regni cupiditate*: "with the desire for royal power." H. 416, IV., 7; A. & G. 245, b.

⁵*conjuratiōem*: "a league;" here not necessarily used in a bad sense; cp. *συννομία*.

⁶*civitati*: what verbs govern a dative? H. 385, II.; A. & G. 227.

⁷*ut—exirent*: object, clause of *persuasit*. The subject of *exirent* is *ives*, implied in *civitas*.

⁸*perfacile—potiri*: indirect discourse; sc. *dixit*. H. 522-524; A. & G. 330 e, 335, 336.

⁹*praestarent*: why is this subj. H. 517, 524; A. & G. 326, 336.

¹⁰*Galliae—potiri*: what cases may *potior* govern? H. 410, V. 3, 420; A. & G. 223, a, 249.

¹¹*hoc*: what case is *hoc*? H. 416; A. & G. 245.

¹²*loci natura*: "by their natural situation;" "by the character of the country."

¹³*qui*: what is the antecedent of *qui*? H. 445, 4; A. & G. 199.

¹⁴*lacu Lemanno*: the Maritime and Cottian Alps separated the Roman provinces from the Helvetii as far as Geneva; from this point to Vienna, the boundary of the Roman province took a south-west direction.

¹⁵*his—possent*: literally, "for these reasons it happened that they had wandered less widely, and less easily were they able to carry on war against their neighbours," i.e. than they wished.

¹⁶*qua de causa*: "for this reason." Others read *qua ex parte*: "in this respect."

¹⁷*pro—patebant*: "moreover, considering the extent of the population and their renown for war and for bravery, they thought they had (too) limited territories, which extended in length two hundred and fifty miles, in breadth one hundred and eighty miles."—*gloria* = *clu-or-ia*: root *clu*, "to hear;" hence, "renown."—*angustus*: the positive for the comparative; cp. Xen. Mem. 3, 13, 3: *ψυχρὸν, ὥστε λείσασθαι, ἐστίν*. The distance from the point where the Jura reaches the Rhone at Fort L'Ecluse, near Geneva, to Bregenz, on Lake Constance, where the Rhine begins to have a northern course, is 180 English miles; and the distance from Fort L'Ecluse to the junction of the Aar and the Rhine, is about 160 English miles.—*millia*. H. 379; A. & G. 257. The Roman mile (*mille passus*, pl. *millia passuum*) = 4,854 English feet; the *passus* originally a double pace = 5 Roman *pedes* = 4 feet 10¼ inches, by English measurement.

CHAPTER III.

¹*constituerunt—comparare, coemere, facere*: when does *constituo* take an inf., and when *ut* with the subjunctive? H. 498, 1, IV.; A. & G. 271, a. Translate into Latin: "the father determined to remain at home;" "the father determined that the son should remain at home."

²*pertinerent*: Caesar is giving the thoughts of the Helvetii, rather than his own: H. 528, 1; A. & G. 341, a.

³*carrorum*: many of the words signifying a carriage were of Gallic origin; cp. *rheda*, *petorritum*, *carrus*, *essedum*. The *carrus* was a four-wheeled car.

⁴*quam maximum* = *tam magnum quam maximum*: "as large as possible:" H. 170, 2 (2); A. & G. 93, 6.

⁵*sementes—facere*: "to sow the greatest possible breadth of corn."

⁶*ut—suppeteret*: "that they might have supplies of corn for the journey:" H. 497, II.; A. & G. 317.

⁷*ad—duxerunt*: "they thought that a space of two years would be sufficient for them to carry out these plans."—*conficiendas*: H. 544, I.; A. & G. 296.

⁸*in—confirmant*: "by a formal enactment they appoint their setting out for the third year." *in—annum*: predetermination of future time is expressed by *in* with acc. Translate: "he called together the senate on the third day;" "he called together the senate for the third day."

⁹*persuadet*: historical present. H. 467, III. & III. 1; A. & G. 276, d.

¹⁰*regnum—obtinuerat*: "had held sovereign power."

¹¹*amicus*: not unfrequently the senate of Rome conferred the title *amicus* on a foreign chief or ruler, for the purpose of gaining his influence.

¹²*occuparet*: imperfect subjunctive after the historical present: *persuadet*; so also *cenaretur*. H. 495, II. ; A. & G. 287, e.

¹³*obtinebat*: give the force of the imperfect: H. 489, II.; A. & G. 115, 2, 6.

¹⁴*dare in matrimonium*: said of a father; *ducere in matrimonium*, *ducere uxorem*, said of a husband; *nubere viro*, said of a woman.

¹⁵*perfacile—possent*: indirect discourse depending on *probat*: "he shows them that it was a very easy matter (lit., very easily to be done) to carry out their plans, because he himself was likely to obtain the sovereign rule of his own state."—*factu*. H. 547. 1; A. & G. 303, R. For *obtenturus esset*: H. 496, II., 2; A. & G. 129, 1.

¹⁶*non—possent*: "that there was no doubt that the Helvetii possessed the greatest power of all Gaul;" *possum* is here used absolutely, "to be powerful," not prolatively, "to be able to do a thing."—*plurimum*: neut. acc. used adverbially; strictly the cog. acc. H. 304, 1, 3 371, II., 2. A. & G. 148, d; 240, a.

¹⁷*se—confirmat*: "he assures them that he would gain for them the sovereign power by his influence and his army." Explain the cases of *copiis* and *illis*.

¹⁸*fidem et iusjurandum*: "an oath-bound pledge of good faith;" a *hendiadys*. H. 636, III., 2; A. p. 296. Decline *iusjurandum*.

¹⁹*et—sperant*: "and if they could seize the royal power they expect by means of three most powerful and strong nations to be able to gain the sway of all Gaul."—*regno occupato*: conditional = *si regnum occupavissent*. H. 431, 2 (3); A. & G. 255. *tres populos*: Helvetii, Sequani, Aedui.—*Galliae*. H. 410, V. 3; A. & G. 249, a.

CHAPTER IV.

¹*ea res* : "this design;" *res* is a general word, often used by Caesar in the sense of "occurrence," "exploit," "movement," "design," "conspiracy," etc.

²*per indicium = per indices* : "by informers"; so *servitium = servi*; *conjuratio = conjurati*.

³*moribus suis* : "according to their custom;" able of manner; cp.: *more majorum, more Romano, ea lege, mea sententia* : H. 416, I, N. 2; A. & G. 245.

⁴*ex vinculis* : give the force of *ex*. With *causam dicere*, compare *causam agere, causam habere*.

⁵*damnatum—cremaretur* : "it behooved that the punishment, that he should be burnt by fire should be visited upon him, in case he was condemned." *Damnatum = si damnatus esset*. H. 549.2; A. & G. 292.—*ut—cremaretur* in apposition with *poenam*. H. 501, III; A. & G. 329.2, 332.f.—Burning at the stake for treason was a common punishment among the Gauls.—*igni* : perhaps a locative; "in the fire"; so *navi processit* : "he went by sea."

⁶*die—dictionis* : "on the day appointed for the pleading of his case." cp. *causam dicere*. With *dictio causae* : cp. *indicta causa*. Is *dies* usually fem.? H. 429; A. & G. 256?

⁷*familia* : used in a Roman sense included the slaves (*servi*), dependants (*clientes*), and debtors (*obaerati*), reduced to a condition of slavery. The word signifies : the body of the *famuli* (= *fac-muli*) from *facio* "to do," or slaves as opposed to *liberi*, or "freedmen," who constituted the family as now understood.

⁸*ad* : adverbially; "about." What other adverb is thus used with numerals?

⁹*clientes* : "dependants"; root *clu*, "to hear"; hence "to obey"; cp. *audio = pareo*.

¹⁰*per eos—erupit* : "by their aid he escaped pleading his own case he so overawed the judge that they did not dare to try him."

¹¹*jus—perséqui* : "to maintain its right," i.e., its right to punish traitors.

¹²*conaretur—cogerent* : explain these subjunctives. H. 521, II. 2; A. & G. 325.

¹³*neque—consciverit* : "and suspicion is not wanting that he was privy to his own death;" i.e., that he committed suicide; a euphemism. H. 504.3; A. & G. 319 d. The negative of the dependent clause arises from the negative character of the main clause.—*suspicio=suspicitio* : the lengthening of the *i* probably arises from contraction. Distinguish *suspicio* and *suspicio*. Parse *consciverit*.

CHAPTER V.

¹*nihilo minus* : for the const. see H. 417.2; A. & G. 250.

²*ut ex—exeant* : an objective clause in apposition with *id quod—constituerant*. H. 363.5; A. & G. 329.2; namely, "to leave their territories."

³*oppida sua* : “walled towns ;” *vicos*, “villages,” groups of houses in the open country. The root *vic* may be seen in *Foikos*, *vicus*, *vicinus* ; English—wick—*Ips-wick*, *Ha-wick*.

⁴*incendunt—comburent* : *accendere*, “to light from without” ; *incendere*, “to light from within” ; *comburare*, “to burn down with a burning heat,” as causative of *ardere* ; *cremare*, “to consume with bright flames,” as the causative of *flagrare*.

⁵*ut* is used for *quo*, because so many words intervene between it and the comparative. H. 467, II ; A. & G. 317 b.

⁶*domum* : acc. of limit of motion. The idea of motion is implied by *reditionis* = *redeundi*. H. 380, II. 2 ; A. & G. 258.6.

⁷*ad—subeunda* : “to undergo all dangers.” H. 544.1 ; A. & G. 296.

⁸*essent* : explain this tense. H. 497. II ; A. & G. 317.

⁹*trium—jubent* : “they order each one to take with him from home, ground provisions (which will last) for three months”—*trium mensium* ; gen. of description. The word *mensis* : Greek, *μήν* ; Sans., *māsa* (month) ; *mās* (moon) ; German, *mond*, all point to a root *ma*, “to measure,” the moon being considered by the ancients the measurer of time.—*domo*. H. 412, II. ; A. & G. 258, a.

¹⁰*uti—proficiscantur* : lit. “that adopting the same plan they may set out along with them after setting fire to their towns and villages.”—*oppidis exustis*. H. 431 ; A. & G. 255. Why is not *oppidis* the abl. of motion from a place? H. 412, a ; A. & G. 258.

¹¹*Noreiam oppugnant* : The Boii were expelled from Italy 161 B.C., by the victories of Scipio Africanus. They then occupied the modern *Styria*. Distinguish in meaning *expugno*, *oppugno*.

¹²*Boios receptos—adsciscunt* = *Boios ad se recipiunt et (Boios) socios adsciscunt* : “they join to themselves the Boii and unite them as allies.” H. 363 ; A. & G. 184. Gives the parts of *adscisco*.

CHAPTER VI.

¹*itineribus* : not to be translated. H. 445, 8 ; A. & G. 200, a. The repetition of the antecedent with the relative is frequent in Caesar when exactness is required. Caesar says they were two roads and only two by which they could get out of their own land.

²*domo* : H. 412, II., 1 ; A. & G. 258, a.

³*possent* : potential subjunctive ; “routes (of such a character that) by them they (the Helvetii) could go out.” H. 503, 1 ; A. & G. 320.

⁴*unum—alterum*, scil., *iter* in partitive apposition with *itineribus*. H. 364 ; A. & G., 184. The first of these journeys was along the right bank of the Rhone. The narrowest part of this route is at Pas de l’Ecluse, about 18 English miles below Geneva.

⁵*vix qua singuli* = *qua vix singuli* : hyperbaton ; note the emphasis caused by the inversion : “where waggons scarcely in single file could pass ;” for mood of *ducentur* : see *possent* above.

⁶*alterum*: the other journey would be along the road leading to *Vienna* (*Vienne*), and *Lugdunum* (*Lyons*) by way of Chambéry. They would thus easily reach the *Provincia*.

⁷*multo*: really abl. of difference. H. 423; A. & G. 250, N. 1.

⁸*nuper—erant*: "were recently reduced to submission." They were defeated by C. Pomptinus 61 B.C.

⁹*nonnullis locis*: "in several places." H. 420; A. & G. 420. Distinguish *nonnulli*, *nulli non*; *nonnunquam*, *nonquam non*; *nonnusquam nusquam non*; *non nemo*, *nemo non*; *loci*, *loca*. For const. of *vado*. See H. 428; A. & G. 248. At present the Rhone is fordable only in two places, a few miles below Geneva.

¹⁰*transitur—transiri potest*.

¹¹*extremum*: cp. ἔσχατον: "a border town." Compare this adjective.

¹²*proximum finibus*: give the different constructions of *prope*. H. 391. I; A. & G. 234 a.

¹³*Allobrogibus*: What verbs govern a dative? H. 385. II; A. & G. 234 a.

¹⁴*bono animo*: "kindly disposed." H. 419. II; A. & G. 251. For *vaderentur* see H. 524; A. & G. 336.

¹⁵*vel—coacturos*, scil., *existimabant*: "or they thought they would compel them by force." Decline *vis*.

¹⁶*suos*, referring to the Allobroges; *eos*, to the Helvetii.

¹⁷*paterentur*: subjunctive for two reasons. H. 498. II; 524; A. & G. 331. a; 336.

¹⁸*qua die*: see note above on *itineribus*. The feminine here expresses the day as a fixed period, a day fixed by authority; *is dies* is simply "the day," "the natural day," "the time."

¹⁹*convenient*. H. 497. I; A. & G. 367.

²⁰*a. d. V. Kal. Apr.* = *ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles*: *ante* really governs *Kalendas Apriles*, *quintum diem* being attracted from the ablative by the position of *ante*. The whole should be *quinto die ante Kalendas Apriles*, i.e., "five days before the first of April," or March 28th. For the computation of time: H. 642-644; A. & G. 376 a. Derive, *Kalendae*, *Nonae*, *Idus*.

CHAPTER VII.

¹*nuntiatum—esset*: for the mood, see H. 521. II. 2; A. & G. 325.

²*eos—conari*: in apposition with *id*. H. 539. II; A. & G. 329. I.

³*ab urbe* = *Româ*: "the city," by way of destruction: cp. ἀστυ, applied to Athens.

⁴*quam—itineribus*: for *quam*: H. 170.2. (2); A. & G. 93.6. Caesar must have crossed the Alps, though he does not mention the fact. He travelled with great rapidity, sometimes, according to Suetonius, (Caesar, 57) at the rate of 100 Roman miles a day.

⁵*Galliam citeriorem*: distinguish *Gallia citerior*, *Gallia ulterior*.

⁶*ad Genavam*: is *ad* necessary? H. 380. II. 1.(1); A. & G. 258 f R. *Genavam*, derived from the Celtic word *gena*, "mouth," because the lake there presses into the river's narrow course. Plutarch states that Caesar made the journey from Rome to Geneva in eight days.

⁷*provinciae toti*: H. 386, I.; A. & G. 227. Distinguish the meanings and constructions of *impero*.

⁸*legio una*: probably the tenth.

⁹*certiores sunt*: "were informed," lit. "were made more certain."

¹⁰*legationis = legatorum*: the abstract is here put for the concrete.

¹¹*qui dicerent*: "to say." H. 497, I.; A. & G. 317. The rest of the discourse is in *oratio obliqua*. For the construction of *oratio obliqua*, see H. 522-4; A. & G. 330, 2; 335; 336.

¹²*sibi—animō*: "that their intention was"; literally, "that it was to them in mind"; *sibi Helvetiis*.

¹³*memoria tenebat*: "he remembered"; for *memoria*, see H. 420; A. & G. 248.

¹⁴*occisum*, sal., *esse*: so also with *pulsum*, *missum*, *concedendum*, *temperaturos*.

¹⁵*sub jugum*: two spears were set up and a third placed over the top; this was the "yoke" under which conquered soldiers were made to pass, as a token of submission. The defeat here referred to took place 107 B.C.

¹⁶*concedendum*: "that this request ought to be granted."

¹⁷*neque—existimabat*: "and he did not think that people of an unfriendly disposition, when once a permission of making a journey through the province was given them, would refrain from committing wrong and violence."—*neque = et non—animō*. H. 419, II.; A. & G. 251. *data facultate = si facultas data esset*. H. 507, 3, IV. 7; A. & G. 292, R., 510.

¹⁸*spatium*: here = *tempus*.

¹⁹*convenirent*: for the mood, H. 519, II. 2; A. & G. 328.

²⁰*diem = tempus*.

²¹*si quid—reverterentur*: "if they wished anything, he told them to return about the Ides of April."—*quid*: when is *quis* used for *aliquis*? H. 455.1; A. & G. 255. *vellent*: for mood see H. 524; A. & G. 336, 337. *ad*, here = "about." Translate from *si—reverterentur* into direct narrative.

CHAPTER VIII.

¹*legione, militibus*: an instrument, rather than agent, because the legion was looked up as a kind of warlike instrument. H. 420; A. & G. 248.

²*qui—influit*: as a matter of fact, the Rhone flows into the lake at the upper end and out at the lower.

³*decem et novem = undeviginti*.

⁴*pedum*: gen. of description. H. 396, V.; A. & G. 215, b.

⁵*murum fossamque*: the probabilities are that Caesar fortified merely places which were without any natural defence. The wall and ditch would be hardly more than three miles long.

⁶*praesidia disponit*: "here and there (*dis-*) he places garrisons." According to Napoleon III., these lines consisted of a series of redoubts (*castella*) defending the left bank of the river, and connected together by a palisaded entrenchment cut in the bank itself.

⁷*quo facilius*: when is *quo* used for *ut*? H. 497, II. 2; A. & G. 317, b.

⁸*se invito*: "without his leave," "against his will." H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255, a.

⁹*conarentur possit*: because *communit* is in effect a past tense. H. 495, II.; A. & G. 287, e.

¹⁰*vēnit*: distinguish *vēnit*, *vēnit*.

¹¹*reverterentur*: from *revertor*; the tenses derived from the present being in passive form—those from the perfect being in the active. Generally *revertor*, "to return before"; *redire*, "after accomplishing one's journey:"

¹²*iter*: "the right of way."

¹³*conentur*: for the mood, H. 524; A. & G. 336.

¹⁴*prohibiturum* = *se prohibiturum esse*.

¹⁵*spe*. H. 414; A. & G. 243.

¹⁶*navibus—factis*: "by joining boats and forming several rafts." H. 431, 2 (2); A. & G. 255.

¹⁷*alii*: we should have expected *alii* before *navibus*, to balance *alii* before *vadis*; "some . . . others." The use of the latter *alii* shows that most of the Helvetii attempted to cross in the way first mentioned.

¹⁸*si—conati*: "in the hope that they by their attempts were able to force a passage." H. 529, II., i IV. i; A. & G. 334, f.

¹⁹*operis—destiterunt*: "they gave up this attempt, being repelled by the strength of the work, the massing of the soldiers, and the darts."—*concurso* here refers to the rapid massing of the forces on a particular point.—*conatu*. H. 414; A. & G. 243.

CHAPTER IX.

¹*relinquebatur—via*: "only the way through the Sequani remained." The only way left was that by the north bank of the Rhone.

²*qua poterant*: "by which they were unable to pass on account of the narrow defiles, in case the Sequani were unwilling"; *qua*: either adverbial or abl. of relative pro. *Sequanis-invitis* = *si Sequani inviti essent*.—*augustias*; what words were used in pl. only? The *Pas de l'Ecluse* is referred to, where a few men could prevent a passage.

³*sua sponte*: "by their own influence." H. 420; A. & G. 248. Decline *sponte*. Donaldson supposes the word *sponte*, a collateral form of *pondus*, and that its meanings were "by their own influence," (as here) and "of their own accord."

⁴*ut impetrarent*: "that by his intercession they might obtain their request"; *eo deprecatore*: H. 431.4; A. & G. 255 a.

⁵*Dumnorix—poterat*: "Dumnorix had the greatest influence among the Sequani, by reason of popularity and liberality."—*gratia*. H. 420;

A. & G. 248; *plurimum*: neut. acc. used adverbially; cog. occ. H. 304. 1.3; 371, II. (2); A. & G. 148 d; 240 a.

⁶*filiam ducere*: cp. ἀγεσθαι γυναῖκα.

⁷*novis studebat*: "he aimed at a revolution"; cp. *novae tabulae*: "a remission of debts." With *novis rebus studere*, cp. νεωτερίζειν. For the dative: H. 385; A. & G. 227.

⁸*ut—volebat*: "and he wished to have as many states as possible attached to him by reason of his kind offices towards them"; *sibi* governed by *obstrictas*: H. 386; A. & G. 2, 28.—*suo beneficio*: H. 413; A. & G. 245.

⁹*ut—patiantur*: "that they may allow the Helvetii to go through their territory"; this clause is the object of *impetrant*. H. 498, I.: A. & G. 331 a; the clause *uti dent* is the object of *perficit*.

¹⁰*Sequani, Helvetii*, scil. *obsides dant*.

¹¹*prohibeant transeant*; H. 497, II.; A. & G. 318.

CHAPTER X.

¹*renuntiatur*: "word is brought back." The subject is really the subsequent inf. clause. There is implied in *re*—the fact that Caesar had sent out men to enquire.

²*Helvetiis—animo*: "that the Helvetii intend"; cp. *in animo versari, volvere*.

³*quae civitas = et ea civitas*. H. 453.3.

⁴*id*, referring to *facere iter*. H. 454; A. & G. 336. The principal verb of the indirect discourse is *futurum (esse)*, the subject of which is the clause *ut—haberet*. H. 501.1.1; A. & G. 319, 332. a.

⁵*futurum (esse)*: the periphrasis with *futurum esse*, *fore* with *ut* and the subjunctive for the future inf. indicates that a certain result will follow from causes unspecified. Hence the meaning is, "if this thing were to take place, he knew that it would be fraught with great danger to the province in its having men paid of war, enemies of the Roman people, bordering upon places open and very fruitful in corn."—*locis*. H. 391.1; A. & G. 234 a.

⁶*ei munitioni—praecepit*: "He appointed T. Labienus, a lieutenant, over that line of defence which he had built." For the dative, H. 387; A. & G. 228. T. Labienus was one of the best officers of Caesar's army. He was *tribunus plebis* in 63 B.C. On Caesar's invasion of Italy 49 B.C., he deserted his old commander and fought on the side of Pompey.

⁷*in Italiam*: is the preposition necessary? Translate: "he went home"; "he went to the house of Caesar"; "he went to Rome"; "he went to Italy"; "he went to Rome, a great city of Italy." Italy proper extended to the Rubicon. Then Caesar included *Gallia Cisalpina*.

⁸*magnis itineribus*: "by forced marches." The regular day's march (*iter justum*) was from six to seven hours long and usually began at sunrise. The distance usually traversed was from fifteen to twenty English miles. On forced marches (*itinerata magna*) of eight to twelve hours, a much greater distance was covered.

⁹*duasque—conscribit* : the two legions he levied in Cisalpine Gaul were the 11th and 12th ; the three drawn from winter quarters at Aquileia were the 7th, 8th, 9th. The 10th was at Geneva. So Caesar had in all six legions. What number of men in a legion? Give the divisions of a Roman legion.

¹⁰*in—Galliam = in Galliam Transalpinam.*

¹¹*ibi—in Alpibus.* Caesar's route lay by way of Turin, Mt. Genève, to Briançon and Embrun. The most direct route would have been by Mt. Cenis (*Alpes Cottiae*), which road, however, did not begin to be used till the days of Augustus.

¹²*locis—occupatis* : "the heights having been previously seized." H. 431 ; A. & G. 255.

¹³*compluribus—pulsis* : the order is *his pulsus compluribus proeliis*.

¹⁴*ab Ocelo—in fines* : When is a preposition permissible before the name of a town? H. 412, i ; A. & G. 243, 6.

¹⁵*citerioris provinciae = Galliae Cisalpinæ.*

CHAPTER XI.

¹*jam—transduxerant* : "had already led."

²*angustias* : decline this word.

³*populabantur* : note the change of tense. Bring this out in translating. The imperfect shows that the action was still going on.

⁴*quum possent* : "since they were not able to defend themselves and their property from them," i.e., from the Helvetii. Account for mood in *possent*.

⁵*rogatum* : supine ; what are the uses of supine in -um and -u? In how many ways can you express, *he sent men to ask for help*?

⁶*ita debuerint* : "that at all times they had so deserved of the Roman people, that their fields ought not to be ravaged almost in sight of our army, their children led into slavery, their towns besieged." Put this into *oratio recta*.

⁷*Aedui Ambarri* : the Aedui around the Arar (*Saône*). The prefix *ambh* is Celtic for *ἀμφί* in Greek. The main body of the nation were on the east of the Middle Loire. Bibracte (*Autun*), the great Druidical capital, and Noviodunum (*Nevers*) were in their domains. We frequently find the generic name as *Aedui* with the specific name as *Ambarri* : cp. *Liqueres Salyes, Dalmatue Scordisci* : *σὺς κάρπος ; βοῦς τὰρος*.

⁸*necessarii—consanguinei* : the former denotes those who are bound by a permanent connection whether of an official kind as *eliens, patronus*, or of a private nature, as *amicus, familiaris* ; cp. *ἀναγκαῖοι* : the latter denotes relation derived from a common origin ; cp. *σὺς ἐγγς*.

⁹*Caesarem—prohibere* : "inform Caesar that their lands having been ravaged they now could hardly keep off from their towns a force of the enemy."—*depopulatis* : the most common passive deponent participles are : *abominatus, amplexus, confessus, detestatus, dimensus, execratus, meditatus, ultus*.

¹⁰*sibi—reliqui*: “that to them nothing now was left except the soil of their land.” Distinguish *solum*, *solum*; *reliqui*, *reliqui*. What case is *reliqui*? H. 397, 1; A. & G. 216, a, 1.

¹¹*Caesar pervenirent*: “Caesar resolved that he ought not to wait till the Helvetii, after all the resources of his allies had been destroyed, reached the territories of the Santoni.”—*expectandum sibi*. H. 388, 301, 2; A. & G. 232, 330, c.—*pervenirent*: for mood. H. 519, II, 2; A. & G. 328.

CHAPTER XII.

¹*flumen est Arar*: “there is a river (called) Arar.” The word *Arar* is said to be from the Celtic *arar*, “gentle;” cp. ἀραιός. The word *Garonne*, from the Celtic *garu*, “rough,” “impetuous.” The modern name of the *Arar*, *Saône*, is probably from the Celtic *sogham*; Lat. *seguis*, “slow.” For a part of the course, at least, the Arar formed the boundaries between the territories of the Aedui and Sequani.

²*incredibili—lenitate*: “of such incredible smoothness.” H. 419, III; A. & G. 248, R. As compared with the Rhone, Po, Adige and Tiber, rivers well known to Caesar, the Saône would appear very sluggish. He had not yet seen the rivers of Britain, notably the Thames.

³*fluat*: dependent question, therefore, the subjunctive. H. 529, III.; A. & G. 334.

⁴*possit*: for the mood. H. 500, II.; A. & G. 319.

⁵*ratibus—transibant*: “attempted to cross by joining rafts and boats.” For *ratibus—junctis*. H. 431, 2, 27; A. & G. 255.—*transibant*: conative imperfect. Where the Helvetii crossed the Saône is not known, probably a few miles north of its junction with the Rhone.

⁶*copiarum*: “of the forces.” What words have a different meaning in the singular and plural? H. 132; A. & G. 79, c.

⁷*partes—flumen*: explain these cases. H. 376; A. & G. 239, 6.

de vigilia: with the Romans the civil day began at midnight and ended at midnight as with us; the natural day began with the twilight and ended at dark. The day and night were divided into twelve hours each, the length of each hour depending on the season. The night was also for military purposes, divided into four watches (*vigiliae*), of three hours each. The expression *de tertia vigilia* means, “in the course of the third watch,” implying that the third watch had already begun. What would *tertia vigilia* mean? H. 429, 1; A. & G. 153.

⁹*aggressus*: what prepositions prefixed to intransitive verbs may make them transitive? H. 372; A. & G. 227 d.

¹⁰*concidit*: distinguish this from *concidit*.

in—abdiderunt: “they concealed themselves by fleeing into the neighbouring woods.” What would *in proximis silvis abdiderunt* mean?

¹²*pagus*: properly a country district of enclosed or cultivated land; root *pag*, “to bind together.” Cp. πάσσαλος, a peg; πήγνυμι, “to fix”; *paciscor*, *patz*, *pango*. With *pagus*: cp. δήμος (from δέω, “to bind”); English *town*, a.s. *tun*, from *tyman* (tie), “to enclose.” The word *pagus*

still lives in the French *pays*, which is often used in the same sense ; cp. *Pays de Vaud*.

¹³*Tigurinus* : the modern Zürich (called *Turicen* by the Romans, and *Turegum* and *Turicum* in the middle ages) was in this district.

¹⁴*domo exisset* : H. 521 II. 2 ; A. & G. 325.

¹⁵*memoria* : "within the recollection." H. 429 ; A. & G. 256.

¹⁶*L. Cassium* : in the year 107 B.C. the Tigurini passed into the territory of the Allobroges under the command of Divico. C. Cassius Longinus, who marched against them, was slain and his army was ignominiously forced to pass under the yoke. In this battle fell L. Piso, a lieutenant of Cassius, and grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law, I. Calpurnius Piso.

¹⁷*ita—persolvit* : "therefore whether by chance or design on the part of the immortal gods, that part of the Helvetian state which had inflicted signal defeat on the Roman people, was the first to pay the penalty,"—*casu* : H. 416 ; A. & G. 245—*populo* : H. 386 ; A. & G. 228.—*principes* : H. 443, N. 1 ; A. & G. 556.

¹⁸*quod—interfecerant* : construe *quod Tigurini, eodem proelio quo Cassium (interfecerant), interfecerant Lucium Pisonem legatum, avum Lucii Pisonis ejus (i.e. Caesar's) soceri*. Lucius Calpurnius Piso, consul B.C. 58, was the father of Caesar's second wife, *Calpurnia*, familiar to all the readers of Shakespere's "Julius Caesar."—*proelio* : H. 429 ; A. & G. 256.

CHAPTER XIII.

¹*hoc proelio facto = post hoc proelium* : "after the battle was fought." H. 431 ; A & G. 255.

²*reliquas curat* : "he has a bridge built over the Arar that he may overtake the remaining forces of the Helvetii." Note the emphasis of the words of this clause is heightened by inversion.—*posset*, because *curat* is a historic present. H. 497, II. ; A. & G. 317.—*in* : note the idiom.—*pontem faciendum curat* ; literally, "he takes care of a bridge, as in the way of making." The gerundive was originally active (if derived from an active verb ; cp. *agitandum est* (Plautus, Tr. 869). "I have got to stand guard." The active force is still retained in *secundus*. Then the idea of necessity was developed through that of futurity ; e.g. *consilium delendae urbis* would mean, "a plan of a city being destroyed" (i.e., in the process of destruction), then "about to be destroyed," then "to be destroyed," then "of destroying a city." H. 534, 2, IV. 2 ; A. & G. 294 b.

³*quum intelligerent* : "when they knew that he in one day had done this (namely), crossed the river, a thing which they themselves, with the greatest difficulty, had taken twenty days to accomplish."—*quum intelligerent* : for the mood. H. 521, II. ; A. & G. 325.—*id* object of *fecisse* and explained by *ut—transirent*. H. 363;5 ; A. & G. 329, 2—*diebus viginti* : explain the case. H. 430 ; A. & G. 256.—*illum*, i.e. *Caesarem*, cp. *ἐκεῖνος*.

⁴*cujus legationis = quorum legatorum*. See Note 10, Chapter VII.

⁵*bello Cassiano* : "in the war against Cassius." H. 395, N. 2 ; A. & G. 190. Since the defeat of Cassius took place 107 B.C., and Caesar was ⁶ruled 58 B.C., Divico must have been a very old man.

cum—Caesare : *cum aliquo agere*, "to have any dealings or transac-

tions with a person"; *cum populo agere*: "to bring a matter before the people," for their vote or opinion.

⁷*si—pacem*: indirect discourse (*oratio obliqua*); turn this to direct discourse (*oratio recta*). H. 527, II.; A. & G. 337. The direct form is given in A. & G. 339.

⁸*sin—perseveraret*: "if on the other hand he (i.e. *Caesar*) shall continue to harass (them) by war"; after *persequi*, scil., *eos*.

⁹*reminisceretur*, scil., *populus Romanus*: "let the Roman people remember"; in direct discourse (*oratio recta*); (*reminiscere*). H. 523 III.; A. & G. 339.

¹⁰*veteris incommodi*: rather a mild term to apply to the defeat of *Cassius*; for the case: H. 406, II.; A. & G. 219.

¹¹*pristinæ virtutis*: "the former valor." Distinguish *priscus*, denoting "former," as worthy of honour, said of an age sacred and primitive = *ἀρχαῖος*: *pristinus*, generally, only a time that is past *πρότερος*; *antiquus*, opposed to *novus*, belonging to an age that previously existed = *παλαιός*; *cetus*, that which has lasted for a long time, opposed to *recens* = *νεαίος*.

¹²*quod—esset*: "as to the fact that he had suddenly attacked one canton;" *quod* is here a causal conjunction. H. 516, II., 2, N; A. & G. 333, a.—*improviso*: note the emphatic position.—*pagum*: i.e., *pagum Tigurinum*.

¹³*ne—niterentur*: "he should not on account of that circumstance either justly claim anything because of his own valour or despise them; that they had been instructed by their fathers and ancestors rather (to succeed) by valour, than make their way by artifices or rely on ambuscades."—*suæ*, i.e., *Caesaris*.—*magnopere*: compare this adverbial expression. —*ipsos*: referring to the Helvetii.—*majoribus*: scil. *natu*: compare this. —note the zeugma in *contenderent*.

¹⁴*quare—proderet*: "wherefore let him not so act, that the place on which they had taken their stand should bear its name or hand down a tradition from an overthrow of the Roman people and the destruction of their army."—Explain fully what the mood form would be in direct narrative.

CHAPTER XIV.

¹*his*, scil. *legatis*: "to these envoys."

¹*eo—teneret*: "he had the less reason for hesitating (what to do), because he remembered (literally, retained in memory) those circumstances which the Helvetii had related." *eo* is ablative to which the clause *quod—teneret* refers.—*dubitationis*: for the genitive. H. 397, 3; A. & G. 216, a, 2.—*dari*. H. 533, I.; A. & G., 336.

³*atque—accidissent*: "and he was the more indignant (at this), because (*quo minus*, the less), (these things) had not happened through any fault (literally, desert) of the Roman people."—*eo—quo*. H. 417, 2; A. & G. 250, R.—with *graviter ferre*: cp. *χαλεπῶς φέρειν*.—*merito*: an ablative. H. 416; A. & G. 245.

⁴*qui—cavere*: "if they had been conscious to themselves of any wrong doing, it would not be a difficult matter to be on their guard."—*qui*, i.e.

populus Romanus.—*injuriae* : for the genitive. H. 399, 1, 2 ; A. & G. 218, a.—*sibi conscius esse* : cp. *ἐαυτῷ συνειδέναι*. *cavere* : distinguish *cavere aliquem*, *cavere alicui*. H. 385, II., 1.

⁶*eo—putaret* : “but (he said) that the Roman people were misled by this, because they were not aware that anything had been done by them on account of which they should fear, nor did they think that they ought to be feared without a reason.”—*eo deceptum* : i.e. *populum Romanum eo deceptum*.—*commissum*, scil *aliquid*.

⁶*quod—injuriarum* : “now if he were willing to forget their former insult, could he also lay aside the remembrance of their late wrongs.” *quod*, properly an adverbial acc. referring to the thought of the preceding sentence ; literally, “as to which.” H. 378. 2 ; 453, 1 ; A. & G., 240, a. These wrongs are specified in the clause beginning with *quod*. H. 540, IV.; 365, 5 ; A. & G., 329, 3 ; 184.

⁷*eo invito* : “though he (i.e., Caesar) was unwilling.” H. 431, 4 ; A. & G. 255, a.

⁸*tentassent* : for mood. H. 524 ; A. & G. 336.

⁹*quod—pertinere* : “as to their boasting in such insolent terms of their victory, and as to their wondering that they had so long done wrong without suffering for it, (the two things) had both one meaning ;” i.e., pointed in the same direction.—*quod* : the two clauses beginning with *quod* stand as the subject of *pertinere*. H. 516, II., IV., 2 ; A. & G. 333, a. -*sua* : i.e., Helvetii. The victory is the one referred to above in which the Romans under Cassius were defeated.

¹⁰*consuesse—concedere* : “for the immortal gods are accustomed, in order that men whom they intend to punish for their crimes may be more severely pained by a change in circumstances, sometimes to grant to these a more prosperous fortune and a longer exemption from punishments.”—*consuesse* : a perfect present ; cp. *odi*, *novi*, *coepi*, *memini*.—*quo* : when is *quo* used for *ut*. H. 497, II., 2 ; A. & G. 317, b.

¹¹*quum—facturum* : “since these things are so, still, if hostages are given to him by these so that he may know that they would do these things which they promise, and if they make amends to the Aedui (and) likewise to the Allobroges for the wrongs which they have inflicted on them and their allies (he declared) that he would make peace with them.” Observe the tenses in subjunctive in oblique narrative are those used in the indicative of direct narrative.—*Aeduis* : sc. *satisfaciant*. H. 384, II., 4, IV., 1 ; A. & G., 227, e.—*ipsis=Aeduis*.

¹²*ita—testem* : “that the Helvetii had received an established custom from their ancestors, that they were accustomed to receive, not to give hostages.”—*consuerint*. H. 500, II.; A. & G. 319.

CHAPTER XV.

¹*morent* : scil Helvetii.

²*coactum habebat*. H. 388, 1, N.; A. & G. 202, c.

³*qui videant = ut ei videant* : *ei* referring to *equites* implied in *equitatus*. H. 497, 1 ; A. & G., 317.

⁴*faciant* : subj. of indirect question. H. 529, 1 ; A. & G. 334.

⁵*novissimum agmen*, scil. *Helvetiorum*. Caesar often used *novissimum agmen* for *extrémum agmen*.

⁶*alieno loco*: "in an unfavourable place;" literally, "in a place picked by another"; opposed to *suus locus*: "ground chosen by himself;" for the case. H. 425, II., 2; A. & G. 258, f.

⁷*de nostris*, scil. *militibus* = *nostrorum militum*. H. 397, 3, N., 3; A. & G. 216, c.

⁸*equilibus*: looked upon as an instrument rather than an agent. H. 420; A. & G. 248.

⁹*aulacius—coeperunt*: "they began more boldly to make a stand, and sometimes to provoke to battle our troops on their rear."—With *audacius*, scil. *solito*: "more boldly than usual."—*subsistere*, scil. *gradum*.—*nonnunquam et* (asyndeton); "(and) sometime seven;" the *et* expressed is not the conjunction, but the adverb=*etiam*. For the case of *agmine*. H. 425, II., 2; A. & G. 258, f. For that of *proelio*. H. 420; A. & G. 248.

¹⁰*suos*, scil., *milites*.

¹¹*ac—prohibere*: "and was content for the moment to keep the enemy from plundering, from foraging and from ravaging."—*in praesentia* = *in praesenti tempore*; "for the moment," "for the time being"; for the case of *rapinis*: H. 414-1; A. & G. 256.

¹²*ita* corelative with *uti*.

¹³*dies*: for the case: H. 379; A. & G. 256.

¹⁴*non—interesset*: "not more than a space of five or six miles (each day) was distant"; for the abl. *millibus*: H. 417; A. & G. 247; for the distributive: H. 172, 3; A. & G. 95. Distinguish *bina castra*; *duo castra*; *binae aedes*; *duae aedes*; *bini horti*; *duo horti*.

CHAPTER XVI.

¹*interim*: "meanwhile," denoting merely a short duration; *interea*, meaning a period more extended; *quotidie*: said of daily repetition; *in dies*, of daily increase or diminution.

²*Aeduos frumentum*: for the two accusatives. H. 374; A. & G. 239 c.

³*quod—polliciti*: "which they had promised in the name of the state." The subjunctive here is the subjunctive of oblique narrative. H. 528.1; A. & G. 341, d. R., or it may be equivalent to *quum id polliciti essent*.

⁴*flagitare*: the historical infinitive, "kept asking," "asked again and again." H. 536.1; A. & G. 275.

⁵*nam—suppetebat*: "for on account of the frosts, because Gaul is situated beneath the north, as has been mentioned above, not only was the corn not ripe in the fields, but not even was there a sufficiently large abundance of fodder at hand." Explain the difference in meaning between *frigus* and *frigora*. H. 130.2; A. & G. 75 c.—*septentrionibus*: see Note 20, Chapter I.; *ante*, see Note 20, Chapter I.; *frumenta*, why plural? This statement shows that a remarkable change must have taken place in the climate of France since the days of the Roman occupation of that country. Caesar waited till after the 24th March at Geneva. He crossed the Alps, levied two legions, and mustered three more at Aquileia.

In carrying out these plans, he must have spent at least two months. The date of his arrival at Lugdunum must have been as late as June 6th. The Helvetii after this occupied twenty days in crossing the Seine, so that on the 26th of June the spring had not much more than begun.

⁶*eo—nolebat* : “besides, he was unable to make use of the corn which he had brought up the river Arar in vessels, for the following reasons (*propterea*) : because the Helvetii, from whom he was unwilling to depart had turned aside their line of march from the Arar.”—*eo frumento*, governed by *uti*. What verbs govern the ablative? H. 421.1 ; A. & G. 249.—*subreuerat*, “had bought up,” from a lower place to a higher.—*flumine* : H. 420 ; A. & G. 258.9.

⁷*diem—ducere* : “they (the Aedui) kept putting off (Caesar) from day to day ; they kept saying that corn was being collected, was on the road, was ready for delivery.”—*diem Aedui* ; fully, *Aedui ducere* (historical inf. = *ducebant*) *Caesarem ex die in diem* ; see also *dicere* = *dicebant*. We have a climax in *conferri—comportari—adesse*.

⁸*se duci* : “that he was being put off too long,”—*diutius* ; A. & G. 93 a.

⁹*et—oporteret* : “and that the day was at hand, on which he had to measure out corn to the soldiers.”—*die*, not translated (see Note I, Chapter VI.).—*metiri*, not necessarily a passive deponent ; scil. *eum* before *metiri*. Grain to the extent of two pecks (*modii*), about half a bushel of our measure, was served out to the army every fifteen days. This the soldier kept in a sack, and when he required flour he ground up the grain by means of hand-mills (*molae manuales*).

¹⁰*convocatis—potestatem* : “after collecting together the chiefs of these, of whom he had a large number in his camp, (and) amongst these Divitiacus and Liscus, who held the highest office, which officer the Aedui call Vergobretus, and is elected annually, and has the power of life and death over his own people.”—*convocatis—principibus*. H. 431 ; A. & G. 255.—*copiam*, distinguish, *copia* and *copiae* in meaning ; also *castrum* and *castra*. *Divitiaco et Lisco*, scil., *convocatis*. Why is *magistratui* in the dative? H. 386 ; A. & G. 228. *Vergobretum* : said to be from the Celtic, *Fear-go-breith*, “a man for judging” ; or *Guerge-breath*, “strong in judgment.” Caesar (8.33) states that the person holding this office could not leave the state during his term of office, and that no one could be elected, if a living member of the family had held the post. The Celtic adj. *guerg*, may be connected with the Aryan root *kur*, “powerful” ; cp. *quercus*, the oak, i.e., the strong tree ; *Quirites*, the powerful, as holding the franchise ; *quiris*, κῦριος, κύριος, κοινάειν.

¹¹*graviter—subleberetur* : “he severely reprimands them (saying), because, since grain corn could neither be bought nor obtained from the fields, on so urgent a crisis, the enemy being so near at hand, he was not assisted by them.”—*posset* ; scil., *frumentum—tempore hostibus* ; abl. absol. H. 431 ; A. & G. 255.

¹²*praesertim—queritur* : “especially does he complain with still greater vehemence of his being left unaided (by them), since he mainly (*ex magna parte*) influenced by their entreaties had undertaken a war.”—*magna ex parte*, literally “in a great measure.” Give the forms of *precibus* : for *multo*. H. 417.2 ; A. & G. 250.

CHAPTER XVII.

¹*quod—proponit* : “states publicly (that) which he had left unmentioned.”—*quod*, referring to *id* understood, object of *proponit*. The rest of the chapter is in *oblique narration*. H. 529. ; A. & G. 336. Turn this chapter into *direct narrative*.

²*esse—magistratus* : “there are some whose influence with the common people is very great, who in their private capacity have more influence than the magistrates themselves.”—*plurimum, plus* (see Note 16, Chapter III.), *privatim*, others read *private*. The influence of the chieftain was paramount in all Celtic communities, from the days of Caesar till comparatively late. In Britain we find the same state of matters as here depicted, till the end of the 17th Century.

³*hos—perferre* : “these by their seditious and wicked speeches deterred the people from supplying the corn which they ought to supply ; if now they were unable to hold the supremacy of Gaul, they had better endure the government of the Gauls than that of the Romans.”—*ne conferant* ; the plural of the verb arises by a *sense construction* from the plural implied in *multitudinis* : for mood. H. 498, II. ; A. & G. 331, e. With *perferre*, scil., *malle*. Another reading is *præferre*, instead of *preferre* ; the meaning then is : “if they were unable then to hold the supremacy of Gaul, they thought the rule of the Gauls better than that of the Romans.”

⁴*neque—erepturi* : “nor ought they to hesitate to conclude that, if the Romans defeated the Helvetii, they (the Romans) would deprive the Aedui, as well as the rest of Gaul, of their liberty.” What meaning and construction has *dubitare* in an affirmative sentence ? What in a negative ? H. 565.3.(2) ; A. & G. 332, h.—*Aeduis*. H. 386.2 ; 385, II., 2 ; A. & G. 229.—*erepturi sint* : more emphatic than *eripiant*. H. 501, II., 2 ; A. & G., 319, d.

⁵*quæque—gerantur* : “and whatever is done in the camp.”

⁶*a se = ab Lisco*.

⁷*quin—tacuisse* : “moreover, in that compelled by necessity, he has told this matter to Caesar, he knew at what risk he did this, and for this reason he had been silent as long as he could be.”—*quod*. H. 16, II. 2, N ; A. & G. 333, a—*id* refers to the clause, *quod—enuntiarit*.

CHAPTER XVIII.

¹*Caesar—sentiebat* : “Caesar felt that by this speech of Liscus, Dumnoix, the brother of Divitiacus was meant :” literally, “was pointed at.”

²*sed—retinet* : “but since he (i.e. Caesar) was unwilling that these matters should be discussed, when many were present, he quietly dismisses the meeting, (and) detains Liscus.”—*quod—nolebat*. When does *quod* take the indic., and when the subj. ? H. 516 ; A. & G. 341.—*pluribus præsentibus* ; abl. absolute. H. 431.4 ; A. & G. 255, a. Give the present indic. of *praesum*.—*concilium* ; the usual distinction between *consilium*, and *concilium*, that the former means “advise,” “plan,” while the latter means “an assemblage,” does not always hold good, though the distinction hold there. *Concilium* : *con.*=(*cum*) *calare*, cp. Gk. *καλεῖν*, “to call together” ; *consilium* : *con. sil*—cp. *solum* ; “a throne,” “to sit together” ;

root *sed* : for interchange of *d* and *l* ; cp. *δάκρυ*, *lacrima* ; *lingua* = *lingua*—*dimittit retinet*. What figure ? H. 467, III. ; A. & G. 276, d.

³*quaerit—dixerit* : “ he (i. e. Caesar) inquires of him in private about those things which he (i. e. Liscus) had mentioned in the meeting.” Distinguish *rego—quaero—interrogo*.

⁴*eudem—quaerit* : “ he makes inquiries about the same things from others in secret.”

⁵*esse vera* : scil. *haec*.

⁶*ipsum—novarum* : “ that Dumnorix was the very man, of the greatest boldness, of great influence among the common people, on account of his liberality, eager for a change of government.”—*ipsum* ; *ipse* has often this meaning ; translate *triginta dies erant ipsi, quum has dabam litteras.—summa audacia* scil., *virum*, for the case of *audacia, gratia*. H. 419 H. ; A. & G. 251.

⁷*complures—nemo* : “ that he (i. e. Dumnorix) had farmed for many years the revenue arising from the harbours and all the other taxes of the Aedui at a low rate, because, when he was bidding, no one dared to bid against him.”—*annos*. H. 379. ; A. & G. 256—*portoria*. The different kinds of taxes were : (1) *tributum*, which may be (a) either a tax so much a head (*in capita*) ; (b) or a tax according to the valuation of the estate, (*ex censu*) ; (c) or extraordinary, exacted in cases of necessity (*temerarium*) ; (2) *portorium* money paid at the port for goods imported or exported ; the collectors of this tax were called *portitores* ; (3) *decumae* : tithes were a tenth part of corn and a fifth of other fruits, which were exacted from all those who tilled the public lands (*ager publicus*) either in Italy or outside of it ; (4) *scriptura* was a tax paid from the public pastures or woods. *Vectigal* was a general term applied to any thing brought into the treasury (*veho, vectus*).—*parvo pretio*. H. 422 ; A. & G. 252 c.—*redempta habere* = *redemisse*. H. 388. 1. N A. & G. 292 c. The revenues were farmed out, that is, the privilege of collecting them was sold at auction to the highest bidder, who collected them through agents (*publicani*). The persons who farmed these guaranteed the state a certain sum and pocketed the remainder.—*illo licente*. H. 431 ; A. & G. 255. The verb *liceor* (middle deponent) is from the same root as *linguo* ; first meant “ to get a thing left to oneself,” hence “ to bid for it.” The intransitive, *jiceo*, has the meaning, “ to be left,” i. e. “ sold ” at a given price.

⁸*his—comparasse* : “ by this means he had both increased the wealth of his own family and had obtained great means to carry out his liberality.”—*auxisse* ; distinguish *augere* transitive and *crescere*, intransitive—*largiendum*. H. 542. III. N. 2 ; A. & G. 300.—*comparasse*, scil., *eum*.

⁹*suo—alere* : “ at his own expense he always maintained.”—*sumptu*. H. 420 ; A. G. 245.

¹⁰*neque—posse* : “ and not only at home, but also among the neighbouring states did he exercise a powerful influence.”—*neque* = *et non*.—*domi*. H. 426.2 ; A. & G. 245.

¹¹*atque—collocasse* ; “ and for the sake of (maintaining) this influence, he had given in marriage his mother among the Biturges, to a man there the most noble and most powerful, (while) he himself had a wife from the Helvetii, (and) had given in marriage a (half) sister on his mother's side,

and his own near relations to be married among the other states.”—*causa*. H. 410; A. & G. 245 c. *Biturigibus*: the Bituriges were a Celtic people, separated from the Aedui by the Loire. Their chief town was *Bourges*.—*collocasse*, scil., *nuptum*; for construction of *nuptum*. H. 546.1; A. & G. 301.—*ipsum*. Dumnorix, who had married the daughter of Orgetorix (see Chapter VI.)—*sororem ex matre*, scil., *partam*.

¹²*favere—affinitatem*: “that he was friendly and well disposed towards the Helvetii on account of that relationship.”—*Helvetiis*; for the case: H. 385.1; A. & G. 227. The full phrase is: *cupere omnia Helvetiorum causâ* or *cupere omnia quæ Helvetii cupiunt*.

¹³*odisse—restitutus*: “that he further hated Caesar on his own account, and the Romans, because with their approval his power had been curtailed, and his brother Divitiacus had been restored to the old place of influence and of power (held by him i. e. Dumnorix).”—*suo nomine*. H. 416; A. & G. 245.—*diminuta*, scil., *sit*. Divitiacus was a Druid of great influence and high position. We may infer that he was a man of refinement. He had spent some time at Rome, B. C. 63, trying to get the aid of the Romans against Ariostus.

¹⁴*si venire*: “if anything adverse should happen the Romans, he had the greatest hope of obtaining the sovereign power by the help of the Helvetii.” Distinguish *accidit*, *evenit*; said if favourable and unfavourable things, the former applied to things that are unexpected, that take us by surprise; the latter, to things that are expected and foreseen; *contigit*, *obvenit*, *obtingit*, applies to things that are fortunate, the first referring to the favors of fortune, the other two to things that falls to one's lot.—*si quid accidat*; litotes, a mild way of saying anything ill-omened; cp *ἐἰ τι παθοίεν* for *εἰ θάνοίεν*.

¹⁵*impero—desperare*: “so long as the empire of the Romans lasted, he despaired not only of (obtaining) sovereign power, but even of (retaining) that influence which he had.”—for *imperio*. H. 416, or 429; A. & G. 246, or 256.

¹⁶*reperiebat—equitibus*: “Caesar found out further in the course of his enquiries, in regard to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish which had taken place, (that) a beginning of the flight in it (i. e. in the battle) had been commenced by Dumnorix and his cavalry.” Distinguish *reperire*, said of things found out with difficulty, after a search; *invenire*, of things accidentally discovered; *quod* is attracted into the case of the relative clause, while its proper place in the antecedent clause is taken, by *fugæ—ejus*, either (1) a prominent adjective, “of that flight,” or (2) referring to *proelium*.

¹⁷*auxilio Caesari*: H. 390, II.; A. & G. 333.

CHAPTER XIX.

¹*quisbus—cognitas*: “after these things were found out.” H. 431; A. & G. 255.

²*quum—accederent*: “when the most undoubted facts were added to these grounds of suspicion.” Distinguish *sulpicio*, *suspicio*.

³*quod—traduxisset*: “the fact that he had led”; for the mood: H. 516, II.; 528, I.; A. & G. 341, d. The subjunctive implies that the fact is well-known to the reader.

⁴*quod—curasset* : “the fact that he had procured an exchange of hostages.”

⁵*non modo—ipsis* : “not only without his (Caesar’s) own orders, and those of the state (of the Aedui), but even when without the knowledge of the latter.” Decline *injussu*.—*ipsis* = *Caesare et Aeduis*.

⁶*a magistratu*, i.e., by the Vergobret, Liscus.

⁷*causae* : depending on *satis*, which is used as a noun. H. 397.4 ; A. & G. 316. What other adverbs are similarly used ?

⁸*quare—juberet* : “why either he himself (i.e. Caesar) should punish him or order the state to punish (him).”—*animadverteret*, a mild way of speaking. With an acc. only *animadvertere*, means “to see,” or “observe.” With acc. with *in*, “to punish.” For mood : H. 524, 503, I. ; A. & G. 320, a ; 336.

⁹*his—rebus* : “to all their considerations.” H. 385, I. ; A. & G. 227.

¹⁰*unum—cognoverat* : “the one consideration that was opposed was the fact that he knew that his good will of his brother Divitiacus towards the Roman people was very great ; that his affection towards himself was very great ; that his loyalty, his regard for right, for self-control, was pre-eminent.” Divitiacus, though belonging to the Druids, was one of the most Romanized of all the Gauls. Coming to Rome, B.C. 63, when the Senate were engaged in crushing the conspiracy of Catiline, he was detained for some time and frequented the best society and enjoyed the friendship of Cicero, who consulted him, as a Druid, on the subject of the treatise, *De Divinatione*. (his name is said to be derived from the Keltic *dui*, “a god”)—*voluntatem—fidem—justitiam—temperantiam*. Note the *asyndeton*.

¹¹*nam verebatur* : “for he was afraid that by punishing him (literally by the punishment of him i.e. Dumnorix) he would wound the feelings of Divitiacus.” Explain the use of *ut* and *ne* after verb of “fearing.” H. 498, III. ; A. & G. 331, f.

¹²*priusquam—conaretur* : “before he made any attempt.” For the mood : II. 520, II. ; A. & G. 327. Explain the use of *priusquam*, with the indicative and the subjunctive.

¹³*quotidianis—remotis* : “dismissing the ordinary interpreters.” H. 431 ; A. & G. 255.

¹⁴*cui—habebat* : “in whom he had unbounded confidence in all things.”

¹⁵*simul dixerit* : “at the same time he reminds him of those things which had been said in the council of the Gauls in his ((Caesar’s) presence) about Dumnorix, and he points out what each one individually had said about him (i.e. Dumnorix) before him (Caesar’s).”—*dicta sint* : II. 528.1 ; A. & G. 340 ; see also *dixerit*. Distinguish *quisque*, *uterque*.

¹⁶*petit—jubeant* : “he asks and advises that without wounding his (Divitiacus’s) feelings, either that he (i.e. Caesar) should determine (the matter) regarding him, after the cause had been heard, or that he should order the state to determine (the matter)” ; *Cognoscere causam*, is to hear, a cause.—*civitatem*, scil., *Aeduorum*.

CHAPTER XX.

¹*ne statuant* : “that he would not come to any determination too severe against his brother.”—*quid* ; when is *quis* used for *aliquis* ? H. 455 ;—*gravius* : H. 444, I. ; A. & G. 93, a. What mood would this *statement* be in *direct* narration ? From *ne* to *avertentur* we have *oblique* narrative. Change this to *direct*. H. 523, III. ; A. & G. 339.

²*se scire* : scil., *dixit*.

³*plus doloris* : “for partitive genitive : H. 397.3 ; A. & G. 216, a. 2.

⁴*propterea quod—crevisset* : “because, at a time when he (Divitiacus) himself had very great influence at home and throughout the rest of Gaul, (while) he (Dumnorix) had very little on account of his youth, he (Dumnorix) had grown (in influence and power) through his (Divitiacus’s) means.”—*gratia* : H. 416 ; A. & G. 245.—*plurimum minimum* ; strictly speaking, cognate accusatives : H. 304.1.3 ; 381, II. 2 ; A. & G. 148 d ; 240 a. With *crevisset*, scil., *opibus ac nervis* ; *opes*, refers to resources of any kind ; *nervi*, to power, strength, originally physical, then political.

⁵*quibus—uteretur* : “wherefore he (Divitiacus) would employ these resources and this power not only to lessen his (Dumnorix’s) influence, but almost to his own destruction.” With *uteretur*, scil., *propterea quod*. For mood : H. 524 ; A. & G. 336.

⁶*quod—factum* : “but if anything too severe should fall to him (Dumnorix) at the hands of Caesar, while he (Divitiacus) held such a degree of friendship with him (Caesar), no one would think that this had not been caused without his (Divitiacus’s) consent.”—*si quid accidisset* : a euphemism ; cp. *ἔπει πάθου—accideret* ; distinguish *contigit*, *accidit*, *evenit*, *obvenit*. Note 13, Chapter XVIII.

⁷*qua ex re—avertentur* : “wherefore, (he said) the result would be that the eyes of all Gaul would be withdrawn from him.” *Totius Galliae = omnium Galorum*. What figure ?

⁸*peteret* : for the mood : H. 521, II., 2 ; A. & G. 325.

⁹*faciat* : note the omission of *ut* after *orat*. H. 499.2 ; A. & G. 331, f. R

¹⁰*tanti condonet* : “he points out that his (Divitiacus’s) influence with him (Caesar) was of such weight, that he (Caesar) would not remit the wrongs done to the state or his (Caesar’s) own personal annoyance in return for his (Divitiacus’s) good will and in accordance with his prayers.”—*tanti*. H. 404, 405 ; A. & G. 215, c ; 252, a.—*condonet*, means originally “to remit some debt (acc.) in consideration for something.” Here it means, to remit a merited punishment, not to the guilty person, but reasonably to another, for the benefit of the guilty.

¹¹*fratrem adhibet* : “he has his brother as a witness.”

¹²*suspiciones* : “grounds for suspicion.” Distinguish *suspicio*, *suspicio*.

¹³*agat loquatur* : H. 529.1 ; 529, II. ; A. & G. 334, 342.

CHAPTER XXI.

¹*hostes—consedisse* : “that the enemy had encamped at the base of the mountain.” The Helvetii were now in the valley of the Liger (*Loire*), a short distance north of Bibracte (*Autun*).

²*qualis—misit* : “he sent out scouts to ascertain the character of the hill, and the chance of ascending it on its various sides.”—for *esset* : H. 529.1 ; A & G. 334.—*in circuitu* : literally, “in the going round,” i. e. “on the other side. Caesar intended to make a flank movement, so that he might get on the other side of the height and occupy the summit above the heads of the enemy.—*cognoscerent* ; for the mood ; H. 497. 1 ; A. & G. 317.—*misit*, scil., *exploratores*.

³*facilem esse*, scil., *ascensum*.

⁴*de vigilia* : distinguish this from *tertia vigilia* ; see Note 8, Chapter XII. What were the divisions of the night? Note 8, Chapter XII.

⁵*legatum pro praetore* : “lieutenant, with the power of commander,” or as we should say, “lieutenant-general,” the *prae-itor*, “the one who goes before,” or “leads” was properly the “general,” and was often used for consul in olden times. The term *praetor* and *proconsul* were used indifferently in the Provinces. Labienus was next to Caesar in command.

⁶*ducibus* : apposition to *his* : “with those (men as) guides.”

⁷*auxilii* : H. 347.3 ; A. & G. 216, a. 1.

⁸*itinere* : H. 420. I. 37 ! A. & G. 258.9.

⁹*quo* : “as” : H. 451.5 ; A. & G. 296, R. 1.

¹⁰*qui—habebatur* : “who was considered very well versed in military matters” ; for the genitive : H. 399.12 ; A. & G. 219, a.

CHAPTER XXII.

¹*prima luce* : H. 440.2 N. 1 ; A. & G. 193. It was now midsummer, and daybreak would be about 4 a.m.

²*summus mons* : distinguish this from *supremus mons* ; distinguish also *imus mons* and *infimus mons*.

³*teneretur* : why subjunctive? H. 521, II. 2 ; A. & G. 325, 323.

⁴*passibus* : for ablative : H. 417 ; A. & G. 247. What was the length of a Roman *passus*? Note 17, Chapter II.

⁵*comperit* : distinguish *comperio*, I find out by inquiry ; *reperio*, I find out by search something *concealed* ; *invenio*, I come upon a thing suddenly or unexpectedly, without any effort.

⁶*equo admisso* : abl. abs., “with his horse at full speed.”

⁷*vellent* : dependant clause in oblique narration : H. 524 ; A. & G. 336.

⁸*Gallicis insignibus* : the devices on their shields and helmets. Here *Gallicus* = *Helvetiis*.

⁹*dicit—subducit—instruit* : not the force of the presents.

¹⁰*ut* : give the different uses of *ut*. H. 467 III. ; A. & G. 276, d.

¹¹*committeret* : H. 498, I. ; A. & G. 331, a.

¹²*visae essent* : H. 529, II. ; A. & G. 342.

¹³*proelio* : for ablative : II. 414-1 ; A. & G. 243.

¹⁴*multo—die* : “at length when the day was far advanced” : abl. absolute.

¹⁵*per exploratores* : distinguish this and *ab exploratoribus*. H. 415, I. I. IV.

¹⁶*pro viso* : "as (something) seen." *Considius*, in the dim light of the morning, had supposed the detachment of *Labienus* on the height a Gallic force.

¹⁷*intervallo* : for ablative : H. 445-9 ; A. & G. 200, b.

¹⁸*millia* : H. 379 ; A. & G. 25-7.

CHAPTER XXIII.

¹*postridie* : *posteri die*, *cotidie* are locatives merged in a dative ; cp in old Latin, *die quinti*, *die erastini*. Others take *posteri die* as ablative and compare *postea*, *antea*.—*diei* is a pleonasm : for the case, see H. 398-5 ; A. & G. 214, g.

²*quod*—*supererat* : "because two days in all remained." When does *quod* take the indicative, and when the subjunctive ? H. 516 ; A. & G. 321.—*biduum*, the quantity of the *i* is accounted for by the fact that *biduum* = *bidivim*, the second *i* is omitted, the first *i* is long by position. With *biduum*, scil., *spatium*.

³*quum*—*oporteret* : "within which it was necessary that he should measure out corn to the army."—*quum* marks the time at the end of which the corn had to be given out ; and the time is determined by *biduum*.

⁴*amplius*—*octodecim* : *millibus* is ablative of measure, not governed by *amplius*. H. 417-2 ; A. & G. 247 c. For the length of a Roman *passus*, see Note 17, Chapter II. What other word may be used for *octodecim* ?

⁵*rei*—*existimavit* : "he thought it necessary to provide for a supply of corn." What cases may *providere* give ? H. 385. I, II. ; A. & G. 228.

⁶*Bibracte* : what case ? H. 380, II. ; A. & G. 258, b.

⁷*decurionis* : "the cavalry of a Roman legion were divided into 10 *turmae*, each *turma* numbering generally 30 ; each of these *turmae* were divided into three *decuriae*, each *decuriae* numbering 10. The commander of a *decuria* was called *decurio*.

quod—*existimarent* : for the mood : H. 516, II. ; A. & G. 341, d, eo. H. 423 ; A. & G. 250, R.

⁹*pridie* : traces of a locative in *e* are found ; as *cotidie*, *hodie*.

¹⁰*quod*—*confiderent* : "because they trusted that they could not be prevented from obtaining a supply of corn." *re* : H. 414. I ; A. & G. 243. Conjugate *confidere*. What verbs are semi-deponent ?

CHAPTER XXIV.

¹*id advertit* : the usual construction with *animus advertere* is *ad aliquam rem*. The two accusatives with *advertere*, *animus* and a pronoun *id*, *hoc*, *illud*, though common in Sallust and Caesar is unusual in other classic Latin writers. Cicero used the form *animadvertere* which Caesar also sometimes uses. *Animus* is governed by the verb, and *id*, by the prep. *ad*.

²*subducit* : "he leads up close" : cp. *subsequor*.

³*qui sustineret* : "to keep in check"; for the subjunctive : H. 497-1 : A. & G. 317. The battle was fought to the west of Bibracte.

⁴*interim—medio* : "meanwhile, half way up the hill"; *interim*, implying a short duration; *interea*, "meanwhile" signifying a longer period occupied. *triplicem aciem*, a legion in Caesar's time numbered 6,000 men, and consisted of 10 cohorts. Four of these cohorts formed the first line; then three behind the first four; then three behind the first three. Each cohort is supposed to have been separated from the other by an interval equal to the length of the cohort.

⁵*legionum—veteranarum* : for the genitive : H. 396 V. ; A. & G. 215. The regular time of service for foot soldiers was twenty years; for cavalrymen, ten. They were then discharged (*emeriti*), or they re-enlisted and served not with the other soldiers, but under their own flag. They were then called *veterani*, *vexillarii*, *subsignani*, or *erocati*.

⁶*ita—collocaret* : "in such a way that he posted above himself on the top of the ridge the two legions which he had very lately enrolled in further Gaul, and all the auxiliary troops."—*supra se*; Caesar was with the four legions; *summo* : H. 440.2, N. 1.2; A. & G. 193—*quas*; see Note 9, Chapter X. Distinguish *auxilium* and *auxilia* in meaning. Here *auxilia* were troops that were not Italian.

⁷*hominibus compleri* : "to be manned."

⁸*interea* : see note 4, above.

⁹*sarcinae*, the individual baggage of a Roman soldier, which consisted of provisions for fifteen days (*cibaria*), utensils (*utensilia*), a saw (*serra*), a basket (*ñscus*), a hook (*falx*), a thong (*lorum*), a chain (*catena*), a pot, and stakes (*valli*), the whole amounting to sixty pounds in weight; *impedimenta*, the general baggage of the legion.

¹⁰*confertissima acie* : this ablative seems to be adverbial of manner after *successerunt* : "after repulsing our cavalry, and forming their phalanx, they ascended in very close order to our van"; *acie*. H. 419.V; A. & G. 255. *phalange*, any compact body of men went by the name of *phalanx*. The Helvetii probably locked their shields together. The Helvetian was quite distinct from the Macedonian *phalanx*.

CHAPTER XXV.

¹*suo*, scil., *equo remoto* : this probably means that Caesar and all his staff officers dismounted to encourage the soldiers of the legion. There is no reason, however, to suppose that the cavalry dismounted. Plutarch mentions that Caesar, in sending his horse away, gave orders that it should be brought back for the pursuit, after the enemy were routed.

²*aequato—periculo* : "the danger to all being made equal"; abl. abs. : H. 419, III.; A. & G. 255.

³*proelium commisit* : "he commenced the battle." cp. μάχην συνάπτειν with *proelium committere*.

⁴*ea disjecta*, scil., *phalange* : "since that close band was dislodged." abl. abs. H. 416 III. ; A. & G. 255.

⁵*gladiis dstrictis* : "after drawing their swords."

⁶*Gallis—impedimento* : “it was a great hindrance to the Gauls in the way of their fighting”; for the two datives : H. 390.1 ; A. & G. 233.1.

⁷*quod—colligatis* : “that, when several of their shields were pierced and pinned together by one blow of the javelins, they were able neither to pull out (the javelin), nor, in consequence of their left hand being hampered in its movement, to fight with sufficient advantage, since the iron point (of the javelin) had been bent (in the shield).” Decline *plus*.

⁸*scutis—colligatis*, for the abl. abs., H. 431 ; A. & G. 255. Distinguish *scutum*,—the oblong shield, about four feet long and two and a-half broad, made of wood pinned together with little plates of iron, and the whole covered with bull’s hide, from *clipeus*, a round shield of inferior size, and generally of metal.—*se inflexisset* : H. 517 ; A. & G. 326.—*sinistra*. The shield was carried on the left arm.—*quod poterant*. When does *quod* take indicative and when the subjunctive ? H. 516 ; A. & G. 321.

⁹*multi—pugnare* : “so that many, after tossing their arms to and fro, chose to drop their shields and fight unprotected.”—*brachio jactato*, i.e. in endeavouring to pull out the javelin.—*nudo*, exposed to the missiles of the enemy.

¹⁰*vulneribus—coeperunt* : “spent with wounds, they began both to retreat, and because the mountain was about a mile distant, to withdraw to it.” *Mille*, here a noun depending on *circiter*. H. 178, 379 ; A. & G. 94, e. N ; 257:

¹¹*capto—claudabant* : “after the mountain had been reached, and when our men were following close behind, the Boii and Tulingi, who, amounting to nearly fifteen thousand men, closed the enemies’ line of march.” With *capere montem* ; cp. *portus capere*, IV. 26, 36.—*millibus*. H. 420 ; A. & G. 248.—*agmen claudabant*, i.e., were bringing up the rear.

¹²*novissimis—erant* : “were a defence to the rear”; for the two datives: H. 390 ; A. & G. 233.—*in itinere*, “on the march”; *latere aperto*, “on the unexposed flank”;—probably the right side, as the soldiers carried their shields on the left.

¹³*Romani—exciperet* : “the Romans changed their front and advanced in two divisions ; the first and second line in such a way that they opposed (the Helvetii) conquered and dislodged ; the third line (in such a way) that they kept in check (the Boii and Tulingi) coming up.”—*Conversa signa*. Distinguish *signa inferre*, *convertere*, *efferre*, *referre*, *inferre*, a *signis discedere*, *collatis signis confligere*, *signis infestis ire aut incedere*. The idea here is that the first and second line of cohorts stood their ground to oppose the men dislodged (*summotis*) ; the third changed this position so as to meet the enemy who attacked their flank. The cohorts now presented two fronts to the enemy.

CHAPTER XXVI.

¹*ancipiti—pugnatum* : “in a two-fold engagement long and fiercely the conflict continued.”—*anceps*, because the Romans were fighting in both parts. Derive *anceps*.—*pugnatum est*. H. 301 ; A. & G. 146 e.—*possent*, scil., *Helvetii Boii, et Tulingi*.

²*alteri—contulerunt* : “some retreated to the mountain as they did in the beginning of the battle ; others fell back in order to the baggage and

their waggons"; *alteri*, the Helvetii; *alteri*, the Boii and Tulingi. Distinguish *alter* and *alius*.

³*quum—potuit*: "though the battle lasted from the seventh hour (of the day) to evening, no one was able to see the back of a foe."—*quum*: H. 515, III.; A. & G. 326.—*septima hora*, one o'clock. The day from sunrise to sunset was divided by the Romans into twelve parts of equal length.—*aversum hostem*. Caesar often praises the valour of the enemies of the Romans.

⁴*ad—pugnatum*: "to a late hour of the night, too, the battle continued at the baggage."

⁵*propterea—coniciebant*: "because they had placed the waggons as a rampart against (the enemy), and (thus) from a vantage ground kept throwing their javelins against our men (who were) coming up."—*propterea quod*, see Note 6, Chapter I. *e—superiore*. The average length of the cast of a javelin was twenty-five yards. It would gain great impetus from even so small an elevation as the height of the carts.

⁶*nonnulli*: distinguish this from *nulli non*. So also distinguish *nonnunquam*, *nunquam non*; *nonnusquam*, *nusquam non*.

⁷*mataras—subjiciebant*: "kept hurling their spears and light javelins from beneath," i.e. from underneath and through the spokes of the wheels. *matarā* (Livy uses the form *materis*) a Gallic spear, derived from Celtic *medrydd*, "to aim at a mark"; *tragula*, a light javelin thrown by means of a leather thongs.—*quum—esset*: "after fighting a long time"; literally, "when the battle has been fought for a long time"; for subjunctive: H. 521; A. & G. 322.

⁸*potiti sunt*: what cases does *potior* govern? H. 410, V., 3; 420: A. & G. 223, a 249.—*tota nocte*: H. 379.1; A. & G. 256, b.

⁹*nullam—intermisso*: "during no part of the night their march being interrupted"; for accusative: H. 379; A. & G. 256. This must mean the night after the battle.

¹⁰*triduum morati*: "having delayed for the space of three days"; with *triduum*, scil., *spatium*. The fact that the Romans delayed so long after the battle, shows that it must have cost them dearly.

¹¹*ne—juvarent*: "(telling him) not to aid them with corn or with any other thing"; for the subjunctive: H. 523, II.; A. & G. 339. What would the mood be in direct discourse?

¹²*qui—habiturum*: "and if they (i.e. Lingones) should aid them (i.e. the Helvetii), (he said) that he would regard them in the same light as (he regarded) the Helvetii." The relative refers to *Lingonas*, and is the subject and object (*eos*) of *juvissent*, i.e. *eos* is omitted.—*quo*, scil., *haberet*.

CHAPTER XXVII.

¹*qui—paruerunt*: "and when these met him on his march and threw themselves at his feet, and addressing him in the manner of suppliants in tears had begged for peace, and when he ordered them to await his arrival in the same place in which they were, they obeyed." Distinguish *cum convenit*; *ei convenit*.—*qui* refers to ambassadors; *eos*, to the main body

of the Helvetii, by a rather loose construction.—*essent*, why subjunctive? II. 529, II.; A. & G. 342.

²*obsides—poposcit*: “he demanded (from them) hostages, arms (and such) fugitive slaves as had fled for protection to him.”—*servos qui*=(*tales*) *servos qui*. H. 528.1; A. & G. 341, d.

³*dum—conferuntur*: “while these were being looked up and collected.” Explain the uses of *dum*. H. 579; A. & G. 276, e. *ea*, neut. pl., referring to *obsides*, *arma*, *servi*: H. 445.3, N. 1; 439.2, N.; A. & G. 195, 181, b. *nocte intermissa*, the hostages; arms and slaves were not all collected in one day; a night elapsed, and at the beginning of this night, those six thousand mentioned escaped to avoid surrender. “A night having intervened.”

⁴*pagi*: see Note 12, Chapter XII. *Verbigenus*: this canton at home dwelt north of the *pagus Tugurinus*, and occupied the modern district of northern Switzerland.

⁵*perterriti*: explain the gender of this word: H. 438.6; A. & G. 187, d.—*ne*: explain the use of *ut* and *ne*, after verbs of fearing. H. 498, III. N. 1; A. & G. 331, f.

⁶*quod—existimarent*: “because, when the number of those surrendering was so great, they thought that either their flight could be kept secret or altogether would be unnoticed.”—*quod—existimarent*; for subjunctive: H. 516, II.; A. & G. 341, d.—*in multitudine*: this would be regularly expressed by the abl. absol. of the present part. of *esse*, if such a present part. existed.—*dediticiorum*: according to Caesar *dediticii*, are those who have taken up arms against the Roman people and being vanquished, have surrendered (*se dederunt*).

CHAPTER XXVIII.

¹*resciit*: “found this out”; *rescio* is to find out a thing concealed, or a thing contrary to expectation.

²*quorum*: the relative precedes the antecedent *his*.

³*his—imperavit*: “he ordered these to hunt after them and bring them back, if they wished to be clear before him.”—*conquirerent*: H. 498.1; A. & G. 331, a.—*sibi*: “in his sight,” i.e. in the sight of Caesar. H. 384.4, N. 3; A. & G. 235.—*reductos—habuit*: “he regarded those brought back in the light of enemies”; a euphemistic way for saying that they were all to be put to the sword.

⁴*unde* := *e quibus*.

⁵*reverti*: see Note 11, Chapter VIII.

⁶*domi*: a locative: H. 426.2; A. & G. 258, d. Give other examples of locatives in Latin. Decline *domus*.—*quo*: H. 410; A. & G. 248.—*tolerarent*: H. 502.1; A. & G. 320, a.—*facerent*: “furnish.”—*incenderant*: why indicative?

⁷*quod noluit*: the indicative as indicating the speaker's reason. H. 516; A. & G. 333.

⁸*ne—essent*: “lest on account of the fertility of the land the Germans, who dwell across the Rhine, should cross from their own territory into that

of the Helvetii, and become neighbours to the province of Gaul and to the Allobroges."—*transirent* : H. 497, II. ; A. & G. 317. Caesar here alludes to the great western plain of Switzerland. The Helvetii had been reduced to about one-third of what they were before. There was a large amount of land unoccupied, and it is reasonable to suppose that the Germans settled in Helvetia in great numbers.

⁹*Boios—concessit* : " (Caesar) yielded this request at the instigation of the Aedui, that they (*i.e.* the Aedui) should allow the Boii to settle in their territories, because they (*i.e.* the Boii) were noted for their pre-eminent valour."—*Aeduis petentibus*, abl. abs. H. 419, III. ; A. & G. 255. The phrase *ut—collocarent*, depends on the ablative absolute. *Aeduis—petentibus*.—*quibus, eis quos—eos*. H. 453 ; A. & G. 180, f.—*postea* : after the rebellion of Vercingetorix, told in Book VII.—*atque* : "as." H. 555. 1.2, IV. ; A. & G. 156, a.

CHAPTER XXIX.

¹*tabulae—sunt* : "lists were found." Distinguish *reperio*, "to find," after search has been made ; *invenio*, to suddenly "come on" a thing without searching for it.

²*litteris—confectae* : "written in Greek characters." No Gallic alphabet is known. The Gauls probably learned the mode of writing from the Greeks of Massilia, a colony established by the Phocaeans, B.C. 600. Strabo mentions that the Gallic contracts were made out in Greek.—*quibus in tabulis* ; for the repetition of the relative, see Note 2, Chapter VI. H. 445. 8 ; A. & G. 200, a.

³*ratio—est* : "a computation is made"—*qui* interrogative. H. 188, II. : 1 ; A. & G. 104, a.—*domo—exisset* : H. 412, II., 1 ; A. & G. 324 ; for the latter, see H. 503. 1 ; A. & G. 320, a.

⁴*separatim* : "in separate lists."

⁵*quarum—summa* : "the total of all these various heads was."—*capitum Helvetiorum = Helvetorium*, by *synecdoche*. We still say "head" of cattle. The sum total was 368,000 ; the number bearing arms, 92,000 ; adding the number of those who left for home, 11,000 to the 32,000 of the Boii who were spared, we find that 226,000 of the Helvetii perished in this four months' campaign.

⁶*qui—possent* : H. 503. 1 ; A. & G. 320, a.

⁷*censu habito* : "after the enumeration was held" ; abl. abs.

CHAPTER XXX.

¹*totius—Galliae* : "of almost all the whole of Gaul." By *Gallia*, the land of the *Galli* in a restricted sense is meant.

²*gratulatum* : for the construction of the supine in *um* : H. 546 ; A. & G. 302.

³*intelligere*, scil., *dixerunt* : for oblique narrative, see H. 523, 524 ; A. & G. 336. "They said that they were well aware, that though he (Caesar) on account of the former injuries done to the Roman people by the Helvetii, had inflicted punishment on the latter in war, this still had hap-

pened no less to the advantage of the land of the Gaul, than to that of the Roman people." *Helvetiorum*—*Populi* : the former is the subjective, the latter, the objective genitive.

⁴*propterea*—*habere* : "because when their affairs were most prosperous, the Helvetii had left their homes with this design, (namely) to carry on war against all Gaul, to become possessed of absolute power, to choose for settlement from a great abundance (of places), such a place as they would consider the most favourable and the most fruitful, and to hold the remaining states in subjection to them."—*eo* explained by the compound clause introduced by *uti*, which is in apposition to it.—*imperio* : what two meanings and what two constructions has *potior*? See Note 8, Chapter XXVII.

⁵*petierunt*—*liceret* : "they asked that they would be permitted to appoint for a fixed day a meeting of all the Gauls, and to do this with the consent of Caesar."—*sibi* : why would *eis* be wrong?—*totius Galliae* = *omnium Gallorum*.—*voluntate* : they wished to show that there was nothing bad intended in their assembling.

⁶*habere* : H. 523.1, N. ; A. & G. 330, e. What is the usual difference between *consilium* and *concilium*? See Note 2, Chapter XVIII.

⁷*et*—*sancierunt* : "and they agreed among themselves by an oath that no one should divulge (what had been done at the council), except (those) to whom this duty was entrusted by their general consent."—*jurejurando* : decline this word ; *mandatum esset* : pluff. subj. of indirect for fut. pref. of direct discourse : H. 524 ; A. & G. 336.

CHAPTER XXXI.

¹*ad Caesarem* : "to Caesar."

²*reverterunt* : conjugate the verb. See Note 11, Chapter VIII.

³*uti*—*liceret* : "that they would be allowed by themselves to treat with him with reference to the safety of themselves and of all."—*secreto* : derive the word—*liceret* : H. 538.1 (2) ; A. & G. 270, a.

⁴*sese*—*projecerunt* : "they all in tears threw themselves at the feet of Caesar."—*Caesari* = *Caesaris*.

⁵*non*—*impetrarent* : " (they said) that they were as earnestly and as desperately anxious for this, (namely), that these things which they said should not be told as they were, that they would obtain these things which they desired."—*id* in apposition to the clause beginning with *ne*—*enunciarentur*.

⁶*Galliae*—*duas* : "throughout the whole of Gaul there were two parties" ; here *Gallia* means *Celtica*.

⁷*hi*—*arcesserentur* : "while they were eagerly striving for supremacy for many years among themselves, it had come to pass that the Germans were invited by the Aveni and the Sequani for pay (to aid them against the Aedui)."—*mercede*. H. 422 ; A. & G. 252.—*arcesserentur* : H. 498, II., IV., 2, and 524 ; A. & G. 332, e, and 336. The form is *arcesso*, not *arcerso*. *Ar* = *ad*, as in *arena* = *advena* ; *arvocatus* = *advocatus* ; and as we have *capesso* from *capio*, so we have *cesso* from root *ci-ere* or *cie-re*.

⁸*horum*—*plures* : “at first about fifteen thousand of them had crossed the Rhine. After these savage and barbarous men had grown fond of the lands, and manner of living, and abundance of the Gauls, a greater number had been brought over.” Decline *millia*.—*transisse* : what prepositions added to intransitive verbs of motion render these verbs transitive?—*copias* : is this form usually used in the sense here given?—*adamassent* : note the intensive force of *ad*.

⁹*cum*—*amisisse* : “with these the Aedui and their dependants repeatedly had engaged in battle ; being repulsed they had met with great loss ; they had lost all their nobles, all their senators, all their cavalry.”—*clientes* : dependants in the tributary states ; root, *clu*, to hear, hence “to obey” ; cp. *audire* in phrase *dicto audire*.—*calamitatem* : perhaps from *cad* “to fall” ; *calamitas* = *cadamitas*.

¹⁰*quibus*—*potuissent* : “by these battles and losses their power had been broken, though they held formerly both by their own valour and by the kind and friendly relations with the Roman people the greatest power in Gaul” ; *fractos*, scil., *eos esse*.—*hospites*, referring to the fact that friendship had existed between the Romans and Aedui as nations.

¹¹*et*—*repetituros* : “and by an oath he binds people of the state that they would not demand the hostages they had given” ; *sese*, referring to *cives*, implied in *civitatem*.—*quo minus*—*sub*, “from being under.” H. 497, II., 2 ; A. & G. 317. b. In cases like the present, *quo minus* is more polite than *quin*.

¹²*unum*—*daret* : “that he was the only one of the whole state of the Aedui, who could not be influenced to take the oath or to give his children as hostages” ; *potuerit*, in direct discourse the subjunctive would be used. H. 503, II. 1 ; A. & G. 320.6.—*ut juraret*. H. 498, II. ; A. & G. 331, e.—*Romam*. H. 380, II. ; A. & G. 268, b.—*postulatum*, used as a law term, “to claim,” as a legal right.

¹³*Sed*—*accidisse* : “but a worse fate had befallen the Sequani, than the conquered Aedui.” *Ariovistus*, derived from *aar*, “an eagle,” and *vistus* a Latinized form of *first*=*horst*, “a nest” ; the word then means *eyry*.

¹⁴*paucis*—*ante* : expresses this in various forms.

¹⁵*futurum*—*pellerentur* : “the result would be within a few years, that all would be driven out of the land of Gaul” ; the subject is the clause beginning with *uti*.—*paucis annis* : express this in another way. H. 429 ; A. & G. 256.

¹⁶*neque*—*comparandam* : Caesar means that Gaul was superior to Germany, both in fertility and in culture ; “the soil of Gaul was too good to be compared with that of Germany.”

¹⁷*ut semel* : “when once for all.” Distinguish *simul*, “once,” “at once,” and “*semel*,” which brings out the idea of completeness. *Magetobria*, from *maith*, Celtic for Latin *magnus*, Greek *μέγας* ; and *brig* or *big*, “a fell.” It is not known where this place was.—*exempla cruciatusque* ; hendiadys.

¹⁸*hominum* : distinguish in meaning, *homo* and *vir* ; *iratus*, *iracundus*.

¹⁹*nisi*—*experiantur* : “unless, indeed, they could get some help from Caesar and the Roman people, all the Gauls would have to do, what the Helvetii had done, (namely), to leave home, to seek out another place of

abode, another habitation, apart from the Germans, to meet and endure whatever fortune might befall them."—*auxilii*. H. 397.3 ; A. & G. 216, a 3.—*idem*, subject of *faciendum esse* explained by the *ut* clause. H. 501, III. ; A. & G. 332, f.

²⁰*haec—sumat* : "if these things were told Ariovistus, he (Divitiacus) had no doubt but that he (Ariovistus) would inflict the severest punishment on all the hostages who were in his hands."—*dubitare*, scil., *se*. Distinguish *poenas dare*, *poenas sumere*.

²¹*vel—victoria* : described in Chapters XXIV-XXVII.

CHAPTER XXXII.

¹*magno—fletu* : H. 419, II. ; A. & G. 248, R.

²*animadvertit* : see Note , Chapter XXIV.—*unos*, "alone."—*face-rent*. H. 524 ; A. & G. 336.

³*sed—intueri* : "but with sullen faces, with heads bowed down, they gazed on the ground." Distinguish *tristis*, "of sad countenance" ; *maestus*, "sad at heart."

⁴*respondere* : H. 516. I ; A. & G. 275.

⁵*cum—posset* : "when he repeatedly asked them and was not able to extort any reply at all."—*quareret*. H. 521, II. 2 ; A. & G. 325.

⁶*hoc—queri* : "on this account the lot of the Sequani was more wretched and sadder compared with (the lot) of the others, because not even alone in secret did they dare to lament."—*hoc*, abl. of difference and of cause.—*prae*, scil., *fortuna*.

⁷*propterea—daretur* : "because to the others the opportunity of escape at any rate was afforded."—*reliquis*, scil., *Gallis*.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

¹*his—cognitis* : ablative absolute.

²*et—putaret* : "and next to these things (which he had heard), many considerations influenced him why he should conclude that this matter ought to be considered and undertaken by him."—*putaret*. H. 503. I ; A. & G. 320, a.

³*quod—videbat* : the indicative as giving Caesar's own reason.

⁴*quod—arbitrabatur* : "while the empire of the Roman people was so great, he thought it the basest thing to himself and the state." The preposition *in* is often used as a substitute for the ablative absolute as the participle of *sum* does not exist.

⁵*paulatim—videbat* : "moreover for the Germans to become accustomed to cross the Rhine, and for a great number of them to come into Gaul, he saw was fraught with danger to the Roman people." The first two clauses are subjects of *esse* understood.

⁶*sibi—temperaturos* : give the different meanings and constructions of *temperor*.—*ante*, referring to the events of 101 B.C. and 102 B.C.

⁷*praesertim—divideret* : "especially since only the Rhine separated the Sequani from our province."—*divideret*. H. 517 ; A. & G. 326.

⁸*ipse—sumerat* : "moreover Ariovistus had put on such airs, and assumed so proud a bearing. —*ferendus non* ; "unbearable"

PROPER NAMES.

ABBREVIATIONS.

adj. = adjective; f. = fem.; m. = masc.; N. = noun; n. = neuter; pl. = plural; sing. = singular.

A.

A = *Aulus*, *i*; N. m.; a Roman *praenomen*.

Aedui, *a*, *um*; adj.; an Aeduan. The Aedni were a powerful nation of Gaul. Their confederacy embraced all the tract of country between the *Allier*, the middle *Loire* and the *Saône*, and extended a little below this river to the south. Their capital was *Bibracte*. When Caesar came into Gaul he found the *Aedui* had been overcome by their rivals, the *Arverni* and the *Sequani*, who had called in the aid of Ariovistus, a German prince. Caesar espoused the cause of the Aedui, and restored them to their former place of power.

Allōbrōges, *um*; N. pl. m.; the *Allobroges*, a people of Gaul between the Isara (*Isère*) and the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) in the country occupied by *Dauphine*, *Savoie*, and *Piedmont*. Their chief city was Vienna (*Vienne*), about thirteen miles below Lugdunum (*Lyons*). The name means "highlanders," from *al*, "high; *broga*, "land."

Alpes, *ium*; N. pl. f.; the *Alps* derive their name from the Celtic *alp*, meaning "lofty." Their length is about 600 English miles. The following are the divisions generally given to this chain: *Alpes Maritimae*, from Nice to Mt. Viso; *Alpes Cottiae*, from Mt. Viso to Mt. Cenis; *Alpes Graiae*, from Mt. Iseran to Little St. Bernard; *Alpes Peninae*, from the great St. Bernard to the sources of the Rhine and Rhone; *Alpes Rhaeticae*, from the St. Gothard to Mt. Brenner in the Tyrol; *Alpes Noricae*, from Mt. Brenner to the head of the river Plavis; *Alpes Carnicae* vel *Juliae*, extending to the confines of Illyricum.

Ambarri, *orum*; N. pl. m.; a people of Gallia Celtica, situated between the Aedui and the Allobroges, along either bank of the Arar or *Saône*.

Aquileia, *ae*; N. f.: a celebrated city in Northern Italy in the territory of Venetia between the Alsa and Natiso and about seven miles from the sea.

Aquitania, *ae*; N. f.: a district of Gaul between the Garumna (*Garonne*) and the Pyrenees. According to Strabo, the Aquitani differed from the Gauls both in physical features and in language. They resembled the Iberians.

Ariovistus, *i*; N. m.: a king of the Germans, who invaded Gaul, conquered the greater portion of the kingdom and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Caesar marched against him and defeated him in battle. He died of wounds or through chagrin at his defeat. His name is probably from the German *Heer*, an army; *Fürst*, a leader.

Arverni, *orum*; N. pl.: a people of Central Gaul, who dwelt in the district now called *Auvergne*.

Aulus, *i*; N. m.: a Roman *praenomen*.

Averni, *orum*; N. pl.: a powerful tribe of Gaul, whose territories lay between the sources of the *Allier* and *Dordogne*, branches of the *Loire* and *Garonne*. The district is now *Auvergne*. The name is from *ar* or *al*, "high;" and *verann* (*Jearann*) "country" or "region."

B.

Belgae, *arum*; N. m. pl.: a people of Ancient Gaul, separated from the Celtae in the time of Caesar by the Rivers Matrona (*Marne*) and Sequana (*Seine*).

Bibracte, *is*; N. m. pl.: a large town of the Aedui in Gaul on the *Arroux*, one of the tributaries of the *Loire*. It was afterwards called Augustodunum, which still remains in the modern *Autun*.

Boii, orum ; N. m. pl. : a people of Celtic Gaul, who dwelt on the waters of the *Sollac*. From Gaul they passed into Germany and settled in the present Bohemia, a corruption of *Boierheim*, i.e., the residence of the Boii. They afterwards went to *Bavaria*, a corruption of *Boaria*. Their names mean "the terrible ones;" from Celtic *bo*, "fear."

C.

C = Caius, i ; N. m. : a Roman *praenomen*.

Cassius, L. ; N. m. : Lucius Cassius was consul 107 B. C. In that year a coalition was formed of the Cimbri and Teutones. After devastating Gaul, they united with the Helvetii and resolved to attack the Roman *Provincia* at several points. The Helvetian tribe *Tigurini*, under Divico, attacked the territory of the Allobroges by the bridge of Geneva and the fords of the Rhone. The other Helvetii moved south. The Romans divided their forces. Cassius, the consul, hastened to Geneva, while his *legatus*, Scaurus, moved against the combined horde of Cimbri and Teutones. Both commanders were unfortunate. Cassius and his army were cut to pieces on the borders of Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*) while Scaurus was defeated and taken prisoner.

Cassiānus, a, um ; adj. : of or belonging to Cassius.

Casticus, i ; N. m. : a chief of the Sequani, on whom Orgetorix prevailed to seize the supreme power in his native State.

Cātāmantoloedis, is ; N. m. : the father of Casticus.

Caturiges, um ; N. m. pl. : a Gallic nation dwelling among the Cottian Alps. Their capital was Caturiges, traces of which are still to be found at *Chourges*, between *Gap* and *Embrun* in the department of *des Hautes-Alpes*.

Celtae, arum ; N. m. pl. : one of the tribes that inhabited Ancient Gaul. The word is derived either from *ceilt* or *ceiltach*, "an inhabitant of the forest," or from the root *cel*, "high;" cp. *celsus, columna*, hence *Celtae* means "highlanders."

Centrones, um ; N. pl. m. : a people of Gaul who dwelt among the Alpes Graiae. They were defeated by Caesar in several battles. Their chief town was Forum Claudii Centronum (now *Centron*).

Cimbri, orum ; N. pl. m. : a people of Central Europe who invaded the Roman empire in the time of Marius. They were a branch of the Celtic tribe. They are supposed to have had their origin in the Cimbric Chersonese (*Jutland*).

Considius, i ; N. m. : Publius Considius was an officer in Caesar's army. He was employed in the war against the Helvetii.

Crassus, i ; N. m. : M. Licinius Crassus, surnamed *Dives*, was a member of the first triumvirate. He was noted for his enormous wealth. At *Corrahe* he fell in battle against the Parthians.

D.

Dīvico, onis ; N. m. : an influential noble among the Helvetii. He was the leader of the embassy sent to Caesar by the Helvetii after their defeat.

Dīvitiācus, i ; N. m. : a leading nobleman of the Aedui, who possessed great influence with Caesar in consequence of his fidelity and attachment to the Romans.

Dumnorix, igis ; N. m. : a powerful and ambitious chieftain of the Aedui, and brother of Divitiacus. He was disaffected towards Caesar and the Romans, and when the former was on the point of setting out to Britain, and had ordered Dumnorix to accompany him, the Aeduan on a sudden marched away with his cavalry. He was overtaken and slain.

G.

Gabinus, i ; N. m. : Aulus *Gabinus* was tribune of the Commons 69 B.C., and passed the *lex Gabinia*, giving Pompey charge of the fleet.

Galli, orum ; N. m. pl. : the inhabitants of *Gallia* ; the Gauls.

Gallia, ae ; N. f. : *Gaul*, corresponding to France and the northern Italian provinces of Piedmont, Venetia, and Lombardy. Gaul was divided in *Gallia Transalpina*, or *Uterior*, or Gaul beyond the Alps, comprising nearly all France; and *Gallia Cisalpina*, or *Citerior*, or Gaul, this side of the Alps, i.e., Northern Italy.

- Garumna**, *ae*; N. f.: now the *Garonne*, a river of Gaul. It runs in the Pyrenees (*montes Pyrennaei*) and empties into the Bay of Biscay (*Oceanus Cantabricus*). According to Caesar, the Garumna separated Aquitania from Gallia Celtica.
- Genāva**, *ae*; N. f.: a city of the Allobroges, at the western extremity of Lake Lemmanus (*Geneva*) on the south bank of the river Rhodanus (*Rhone*).
- Germania**, *ae*, N. f.: a district of Central Europe inhabited by the Germans. The word is probably from either (1) *wer*, "war" the (Romans softening the *w* to *g*) and *mann*, "a man," so the Germani means "warriors," or (2) from the Celtic *gerr*, "war," and *mann*, "a man."
- Graecus**, *a, um*; adj.: *Grecian*, a name given to an inhabitant of Greece, a country of Southern Europe.
- Graiōcēli**, *orum*; N. pl. m.: a tribe of Gaul dwelling near the Alps.

H.

- Harūdēs**, *um*; N. pl. m.: a German tribe in the vicinity of the Marcomanni, between the Rhine and the head waters of the river Danube. This district was in the vicinity of the present cities of *Rothweil* and *Fursterberg*.
- Helvetii**, *orum*; N. pl. m.: a nation of Gaul conquered by Caesar. It is generally supposed that the Helvetia corresponded to modern *Switzerland*, but the boundaries of the ancient province were of less extent than the modern Switzerland, being bounded on the north by the Rhenus and Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*); on the south by the Rhodanus and Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*), and on the west by Mt. Jura.
- Hispānia**, *ae*; N. f.: *Spain*. The name is derived from a corrupt form of *ἑσπερία*, "the western land."

I.

- Italia**, *ae*; N. f.: Italy; a country of Southern Europe.

J.

- Jura**, *ae*; N. f.: a range of mountains extending from the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) to the Rhenus (*Rhine*) and separating the territory of the Helvetii from that of the Sequani. The word is from the Celtic, *Jou ray*, or *the dominion of God or Jupiter*.

L.

- L=Lucius**: Lucius a Roman *praenomen*.
- Lābiēnus**, *i*; N. m.: *Titus Labienus* was one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic wars. In the beginning of the civil wars he left Caesar for Pompey. He escaped at Pharsalia, but fell at Munda.
- Latobriges**, *um*; or **Latobrigi**, *orum*; N. m. pl.: a people of Belgic Gaul. They extended along the Banks of the Rhine, about ninety miles west of Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*).
- Lemannns**, *i*; N. m.: now Lake of *Geneva*, separating the territory of the Helvetii from that of Gaul. It is almost 45 miles long by 11 wide.
- Lingōnes**, *um*; N. m. pl.: a people of Gaul, whose territories included Vosgesus (*Vosges*), and, consequently, the source of the Mosa (*Meuse*) and Matrona (*Marne*). They had a town named also *Lingones* (now *Langres*) and the territory corresponded to the modern department of *de la Haute-Marne*.
- Liscus**, *i*; N. m.: *Liscus* was chief magistrate or vergobret of the Aedui, who gave to Caesar information of the conduct and designs of Dumnorix.

M.

- M=Marcus**: a Roman *praenomen*.
- Messāla**, *ae*; N. m.: *Marcus Valerius Messala* was consul along with Marcus Piso B. C. 61.
- Matrōna**, *ae*; N. f.: a river of Gaul, now the *Marne*, which formed part of the old boundary between *Gallia Belgica* and *Gallia Celtica*.

N.

Namēius, *i*; N. m.: a Chieftain of the Helvetii, sent along with Verudoctius at the head of an embassy to Caesar.

Nōricum, *i*; N. n.: a province of the Roman empire, bounded on the north by the Danube, on the west by Vindicia and Rhaetia, on the east by Pannonia, and on the south by Illyricum and Gallia Cisalpina. The chief town was Noreia, the capital of the Norica or Norici, which was in days of Caesar besieged by the Boii.

Noreia, *ae*; N. f.: the capital of Noricum.

O.

Océānus, *i*; N. m.: the Atlantic Ocean.

Ocēlum, *i*; N. n.: a city among the Cottian Alps; now *Usseau* in *Piedmont*.

Orgetorix, *igis*; N. m.: a nobleman among the Helvetii, ranking first, according to Caesar, in birth and riches. Full of ambition, he formed a conspiracy among the nobles and prevailed on his people to seek a country other than their native land. He was chosen to carry out the plans of the conspirators. His conduct fell under suspicion and he was put on trial. By aid of his retainers he managed to rescue himself, but shortly afterwards died, as was suspected, by his own hand.

P.

P=**Publius**. a Roman *praenomen*.

Piso, *ōnis*; N. m.: *Lucius Piso*, consul 61 B. C., with M. Messala.

Piso, *ōnis*; N. m.: *Lucius Piso* was consul 112 B. C. Five years after he served as lieutenant under the consul Cassius, but was slain, together with him, by the Tugurini. He was ancestor of L. Piso, Caesar's father-in-law.

Pyrennaei, *scil montes*: the *Pyrenees*, a range of mountains separating Gaul from Spain. The derivation of the word is from the Celtic *pyren* or *pyrn*, "a high mountain." From this root may be derived *Brenner* in the Tyrol: *Pyern*, in Austria; *Fernor*, in the Tyrol.

R.

Raurāci, *ōrum*; N. m.: a Gallic tribe above the Helvetii and between the Sequani and the Rhine. Their chief town was Rauracum, afterwards called Augusta Rauracum, and now *Augst*, a small village near *Basle*.

Rhenus, *i*; N. m.: the *Rhine*, rising in the Lepontine Alps, a little above *Mt. St. Gothard*, in the country of the *Girsons*. It passes through Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*), afterwards through Lake Acronius (*Tell*), nearly west to Basilia (*Balese*). At this point it flows northerly, receiving various tributary streams, till it enters the North Sea. The derivation is from the Aryan root *sru*, "to flow."

Rhōdānus, *i*; N. m.: the *Rhone*, a river rising in the Lepontine Alps not more than two leagues from the sources of the Rhine. It pours through Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*), and flows in a swift current to the Sinus Gallicus (*Gulf of Lyons*). The word is derived also from the Aryan *sru*, "to flow."

Rōmānus, *a um*: *Roman*.

S.

Santōni, *orum*; or **Santōnes**, *um*; N. m. pl.: a people of Gallia Celtica, whose territory lay between the Pictones on the north and the Garumna on the south. Their chief town was Mediolanum, called Santones, now *Saintes*.

Segūisāni, *orum*; N. m. pl.: a people of Gallia Celtica to the south of the Aedui and in whose territory lay the city of Lugdunum (*Lyons*). The chief town of their tribe was Forum Segusianorum (now *Féurs*).

Sequāna, *ae*; N. f.: a river of Gaul, rising in the extreme northern part of the territory of the Aedui and falling into the Oceanus Britannicus (*English Channel*).

Sequānus, *a um*; adj.: a *Sequanian*. The Sequani were a people of Gallia Celtica. They called in the aid of Ariovistus to aid them against the Aedui. After the defeat of their German allies, they severely felt the power of the Aedui. Caesar, however, restored them to their former power. Their chief town was Vesontio (now *Besançon*).

Sulla, *ae* ; N. m. : Lucius Cornelius Sulla, a celebrated Roman. He served as quaestor to Marcus in Africa and afterwards was the great political opponent of his old commander. After gaining the highest offices of the State, he gave up the dictatorship, and died B.C. 79.

T.

Teutōnes, *um* ; N. m. pl. : a name given to a branch of the great Germanic family. Along with the Cimbri they devastated Northern Italy and Gaul from 113 to 102 B.C.

Tigūrinus, *a, um* ; adj. : a canton of the Helvetii, near Lake Zürich.

Tōlōsātīes, *um* ; N. pl. : a people of Aquitania. Their chief town was *Tolosa* (now *Toulouse*).

Tulingi, *orum* ; N. pl. : a German tribe, whose territories lie to the north of the Helvetii. The modern *Stuhlingen* marks the site of the ancient capital.

Verūdoctūs, *i* ; N. m. : a chief of the Helvetii, sent along with Nameius, at the head of an embassy to Caesar. Their object was to request permission to march through the Roman province.

Vōcontīi, *orum* ; N. m. pl. : a tribe of Southern Gaul, lying to the east of the Rhone. Their chief town was *Dea* (now *Die*).

ABBREVIATIONS.

a. <i>or</i> act.	active.	m.	masculine.
abl.	ablative.	n. <i>or</i> neut.	neuter.
acc.	accusative.	nom.	nominative.
adj.	adjective.	num.	numeral.
adv.	adverb.	obsoL.	obsolete.
comm. gen.	common gender.	ord.	ordinal.
comp.	comparative degree.	P. <i>or</i> part.	participle.
conj.	conjunction.	pass.	passive.
cp.	compare.	perf.	perfect.
dat.	dative.	pers.	person, personal.
def. defect.	defective.	pluperf.	pluperfect.
dem. demonstr.	demonstrative.	plur.	plural.
dep.	deponent.	pos.	positive degree.
dissyll.	dissyllable.	poss.	possessive.
etym.	etymology.	prep.	preposition.
f.	feminine.	pres.	present.
fr.	from.	prob.	probably.
freq.	frequentative.	pron.	pronoun.
fut.	future.	rel.	relative.
gen.	genitive.	Sans.	Sanscrit.
Gr.	Greek.	semi-dep.	semi-eponent.
imperf.	imperfect.	sing.	singular.
ind. <i>or</i> indic.	indicative.	subj.	subjunctive.
indecl.	indeclinable.	sup.	superlative: supine.
indef.	indefinite.	v. a.	verb active.
inf. <i>or</i> infin.	infinitive.	v. dep.	verb deponent.
interj.	interjection.	v. n.	verb neuter.
interrog.	interrogative.	voc.	vocative.
irr. <i>or</i> irreg.	irregular.	=	equal to.

Where the etymology is not given, the word is of very uncertain or unknown origin.

VOCABULARY.

A.

ā ; see *ab*.

ab (*ā*), prep. gov. abl. : *From, away from. On the side of ; in the direction of. Of or from, a person to whom a request, etc., is made. Of the agent : By* [akin to Gr. ἀπ-ό].

ab-do, d di, ditum, dēre, 3. v. a. [*āb*, "away"; do, "to put"] ("To put away or remove") *To hide, conceal. With personal pron. in reflective force : To hide, or conceal, one's self by withdrawing.*

ab-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcere, 3. v. a. [*āb*, "away"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead away.*

abs-ens, entis, Pa [abs-um, "to be absent"] *Absent.*

abs-tīnēo, tīnui, tentum, tīnēre, 2. v. n. [for abs-tēnēo; for abs. (=ab), "from"; tēnēo, "to hold"] *To refrain, abstain.*

ab-sum, fūi, esse, v. n. [*āb*, "away"; sum, "to be"]. *To be away ; to be absent or distant. To be wanting. With Dat. of person : To be wanting to a person ; i.e. to be of no aid, or service, to one.*

ac ; see *atque*.

ac-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdere [for ad-cēdo; fr. ad, "to"; cēdo, "to go"]. *To go to or up to ; to draw near, approach. To be added.*

acceptus, a, um ; P. perf. pass. of *accipio*. With Dat. : *Agreeable, or acceptable, to.*

ac-cīdo, cīdi, no sup, cīdere, 3. v. n. [for ad-cīdo; fr. ad, "upon"; cādo, "to fall"]. *To fall out, happen, come to pass.*

ac-cīpio, cēpi, ceptum, cīpere, 3. v. a. [for ad-cāpio; fr. ad, "to"; cāpio, "to take"] *To receive.*

ac-curro, curri and cūcurri, cursum, currere, 3. v. n. [for ad-curro; fr. ad, "to"; curro, "to run"] With ad : *To run to or up to ; to hasten up to.*

ac-cūs-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for ad-caus-o; fr. ad, "to"; caus-a, "a judicial process"] *To accuse, arraign, bring to trial. To complain of, to chide, blame, reproach.*

ā-ciēs, īei, f. [AC, root of āc-ō, "to sharpen"] *Of the eyes : Keen glance, or*

look ; keenness. Military term : Order, or line, of battle.

ācr-iter, adv. [ācer, acr-is, "sharp"] *Sharply, vigorously.*

ād, prep. gov. acc., *To, towards. Up to. At, by, near, to. To the number of. For, for the purpose of, in order to.*

ād-aequo, aequāvi, aequātum, aequāre, 1. v. a. [ād, "to"; aequo, "to make equal"]. *To bring to an equality.*

ād-āmo, āmāvi, āmātum, āmāre, 1. v. a. [ād, to denote "commencement"; āmo, "to love"] *To begin to love, to conceive an affection for.*

ad-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcere, 3. v. a. [ād, "to"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead to or up, to bring up.—To prompt, move, induce.*

ād-ēquīto, ēquitāvi, ēquitātum, āquitāre, 1. v. a. [ad, "to"; equito "to ride"] With ad : *To ride to or towards ; to ride up.*

ad-hībēo, hībui, hībitum, hībēre, 2. v. a. [for ad-hābēo; fr. ad, "at"; hābēo, "to have"] *To summon, send for.*

ādī-tus, tūs, m. [ādēo, "to go to," through root ADI]. *Means of approach, access.*

ad-mīror, mīrātus sum, mīrāri, 1. v. dep. [ad, "without force"; mīror, "to wonder"; root mī, "to wonder," Eng. *smile*]. *To wonder or be astonished*

ad-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [ad, "to"; mitto, "to allow to go"] *Of a horse as Object : To give the reins to.*

ādōlesc-ens, entis, comm. gen. [P. pres. of ādōlesc-o, "to grow up"; as Subst]. *A youth.*

ādōlescent-ia, iae, f. [ādōlescens, ādōlescent-is] *Youth.*

ād-ōrior, ortus, sum, ōriri, 4. dep. [ād, "against"; ōrior, "to rise"] *To attack, assault, assail.*

adscī-sco, vi, tum, scēre, 3. v. a. inch. [adscī-o "to take to one's self knowingly ; to admit"] *To take to one's self ; to unite, join.*

ad-sum, fūi, esse, v. n. [ād, "at"; sum, "to be"] *To be present ; to be at hand.*

adven-tus, tūs, m. [advēnio, "to come to"] *Arrival*.

adversus, sa, sum, adj. [for advert-sus; fr. advert-o, "to turn towards"] *Unfavourable, unsuccessful*.

adverto, verti, versum, vertēre, 3. v. a. [ād, "towards"; ver-to, "to turn"] *To observe, recognize, perceive, by directing the mind towards an object*.

aedific-ium, ii, n. [aedific-o, "to build"; aedes, "a house"; originally, "a hearth"; root AED, "to burn": cp. aiθw, and facio, "to make"] *A building of any kind*.

aeger, gra, grum, adj. *Sick*.

aegre, adv. *With difficulty, scarcely*.

aequo, āre, āvi, ātum, [aequus], v. act. *To make equal*.

aequus, a, um, adj. *Equal, just, fair*.

aestas, tātis, n. f. *Summer* [root AED, "to burn"].

aestimo, āre, āvi, ātum, v. act. *To estimate, value*.

aestus, us, n. m. *Heat*.

affēro, ferre, attūli, allātum, v. act. *To bring* [ad, fero].

afficio, ficere, feci, factum, v. act. *To affect, treat*.

āger, agri, n. m. *County, district* [ag, "to drive"; cp. ἀγρός; hence, where cattle are driven].

agger, iris, [ad, gero], n. m. *A pile, mound*.

aggrēdiōr, grēdi, gressus, sum, v. 3. [ad, gradior, "to march"] *To go against*.

agmen, minis, n. m. [ag "to drive or lead"] *An army on the march*.

āgo, agere, ēgi, actum, v. act. *To do, drive, move*.

ālācer, cris, cre, adj. *Active, eager*.

ālācritas, tātis, n. f. *Eagerness*.

ālīās, adv. *Elsewhere; alias* . . . alias, at one time . . . at another.

ālīēno, ā e, āvi, ātum, v. act. *To estrange*.

ālīēnus, a, um, adj. [alius] *Belonging to another*.

āliquam-dīu, adv. [aliquam (adv.), "in some degree"; diu, "for a long time"] *For some long, or considerable, time*.

ālī-quis, quid (Gen.: ālicūjus; Dat.: ālicui; Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. not used), indef. pron. subst. (ālī-us; quis) *Some one, somebody; something*.

ālīus, ia, iud (Gen.: ālius; Dat.: āli), adj.: *Another, other, of many*. As Subst.: (a) Sing.: āl-ius, ālius, m.

Another person, another. Plur.: ālii, ōrum, m. *Other persons, others; alius*. . . alius, onē . . . another.

āl-o, ūi, itum and tum, ēre, 3. v. a.; *To nourish, maintain, foster, cherish* [akin to Gr. ἀλ-θω, "to make to grow"]

al-ter, tēra, tērum (Gen.: altērius; Dat.: altēri), adj.: *The other of two: alter* . . . alter, the one . . . the other.

alt-itūdo, itūdinis, f. [alt-us, "high"] *"The quality of the altus"; hence: Height*.

al-tus, ta, tum, adj. [a-lo, "to nourish"] *High, lofty*.

āment-ia, iae, f. [āmēns, ament-is, "foolish"] *Folly, infatuation*.

āmīc-itia, itiae, f. [āmīc-us, "a friend"] *Friendship. A league of amity, alliance between nations*.

ām-icus, īca, īcum, adj. [am-o, "to love"] *Loving, friendly, kind*. As Subst.: **āmīcus**, i, m. *A friend*.

ā-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittere, 3. v. a. [ā, "from"; mitto, "to let go"] *To lose*.

ām-or, ōris, m. [ām-o, "to love"] *Love*.

amplius, comp. adv. [adverbial neut. of amplior, "more extensive"; see amplius] *More, further*.

am-pl-us, a, um, adj. [am (=ambi), "around"; pl-ō, "to fill"] *Ample, extensive. Noble, distinguished, illustrious*.

an, conj. [prob. a primitive word] Introducing the second half of a disjunctive sentence: *Or: an* . . . an, whether . . . or; see, also, ne.

an-ceps, cēpit-is, adj. [for an-cēpit-s; fr. an (=ambi), "around"; cēput. cēpit-is, "a head"] *Doubtful, uncertain*.

angust-iae, iārum, f. plur [angust-us, "narrow"] *Narrowness. A defile, pass*.

angus-tus, ta, tum, adj. [for angor-tus; fr. angor, "compression"] *Narrow, contracted, limited, confined*.

anim-adverto, adverti, adversum, advertēre, 3. v. a. [animus, "the mind"] *To perceive, observe; chastise, punish*.

ānīmus, i, m. *Mind; courage, spirit, heart*.

an-nus, ni, m. *A year* [akin to Sans. root AM, "to go"; also to Gk. ἐν-ετος = ἐν-εαυτός, "a year"]

ann-ūs, ūa, ūum, adj. [ann-us, "a year"] *Yearly, annual*. In adverbial force: *Annually, year by year*.

ante, adv. and prep. Adv. *Before, previously*. Prep. gov. acc.: *Before* [akin to Sans. ati, "beyond"; Gr. ἀντι, "over against"]

ant-ĕā, adv., [prov. for anteam; fr. ant-e, "before"; eam, acc. sing. fem. of pron. is, "this, that."] *Formerly previously, once.*

ant-iquus, īqua, īquum, adj. [ant-e, "before"] *Former, ancient, old.*

āper-tus, ta, tum, adj. [āpēr-io "to uncover"] *Uncovered, unprotected, exposed.* Of places: *Open, clear.*

appell-o, āvi, ātum, āre [for ad-pell-o; fr. ad. "towards"; pell-o, "to bring"] 1. v. a. *To call.*

ap-pēto, pētīvi or pētīi, pētītum, pēt-ēre, 3. v. a. [for ad-pēto; fr. ād. "to or towards"; pēto, "to seek or go to"] *To seek or strive after; to endeavour, to get or obtain.*

Aprī-lis, lis, m. contracted from Apr-ēlis; tr. āpēri-o, "to open") The month of *April*; in which the earth opens itself for fertility. As adj.: *Of April.*

āp-ud, prep. gov. acc. [prob. obsol. āp-o, āp-io, "to lay hold of"] *With, near to. Among.*

arbītr-ium, īi, n. [arbīter, arbītr-i, "one who treats a thing according to his own will; a master," etc.] *Will, pleasure, free-will, etc.*

arbītr-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [arbīter, arbītr-i, "an umpire"] *To hold as true in one's mind; to suppose, deem, consider, regard, think, etc.*

ar-ces-so, sivi, situm, sēre, 3. v. a. [for ar-ced-so; fr. ar. (= ad, "to"; cēd-o, "to go") *To call, summon, send for.*

ar-ma, mōrum, n. plur. *Arms, weapons* [prob. ἄρμα, "to adapt"].

arm-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [arm-a, "arms, equipments," etc.] *To furnish with arms or weapons; to arm. To equip, fit out, furnish.*

arrōgan-ter, adv. [for arrogant-ter; fr. arrogans, arrogant-is, "arrogant"] *Arrogantly, presumptuously.*

arrōgan-tia, iae, f. [arrōgans, arrōgant-is, "arrogant"] *Arrogance, presumption.*

arx, arcis, f. [for arc-s; fr. arc-eo, "to enclose"] *A castle, citadel, fortress.*

a-scendo, scendi, scensum, scendēre, 3. v. n. [for ad-scando; fr. ad. in "augmentative" force; scando, "to mount"] *To mount, ascend.*

ascen-sus, sūs, m. [for ascend-sus; fr. ascend-o] *An ascent.*

āt, conj. *But* [akin to Sans. *atha*, Gr. *ἀτά*, "but"].

at-que, (contr. *ac*), conj. [for adque; fr. ād, denoting "addition"; quē, "and"] *And also; and*

at-tingo, tīgi, tactum, tīgēre, 3. v. a. [for ad-tango; fr. ād, "against"; tango, "to touch"] *To touch on, border upon.*

auctōr-itas, itātis, f. [auctor, "a producer"] *Weight of character, influence, authority.*

auc-tus, ta, tum, adj. [for aug-tus; fr. aug-ēo, "to increase"] *Great, distinguished.*

audāc-ia, iae, [audax, audācis, "bold"] *Boldness.*

audācius, see audacter.

audacter, adv. [audax, aud-āc-is, "bold"] *Boldly.*

audēo, ausus sum audēre, 2. v. semi-dep. *To dare, or venture, to do something.*

aud-īo, īvi or īi, ītum, īre, 4. v. a. *To hear* [akin to *aus* (= *oūs*) *αὐτός*, "an ear"].

augēo, auxi, auctum, augēre, 2. v. a. *To increase, augment.*

aut, conj. *Or* :—*aut . . . aut, either . . . or.*

aut-em, conj. : *But, on the other hand. Besides, further, moreover* [akin to *αὐτ-ἀπ*].

auxil-ium, īi, n. [prob. fr. obsol. adj. auxil-is (= aug-sil-is, fr. aug ēo, "to increase"), "increasing"] *Help, aid, assistance, succor.*

āvār-itia, itiae, f. [āvār-us, "avaricious"] *Avarice, covetousness.*

ā-verto, verti, versum, vertēre, 3. v. a. [a. "away"; verto, "to turn"] *To turn away. To turn aside, divert.*

āvus, i, m. *A grandfather.*

B.

barbārus, i, m. [barbarus (adj.), "barbarian"] *A barbarian.*

bellīc-ōsus, ōsa, ōsum, adj. [bellīc-us, "warlike"] *Very warlike, martial.*

bell-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. [bell um, "war"] *To wage war; to war.*

b-ellum, ellī, n. [old form dū-ellum; fr. dūo, "two"] *War, warfare.*

bēnēfic-ium, īi, n. [for bēnē-fāc-ium, fr. bene, "well"; fāc-io, "to do"] *Kindness, favour, benefit.*

bidu-um, i, n. [bidū-us [for bi-di-vus, fr. bi (= bis), "twice"; di-es, "a day"] *A space, or period, of two days; two days.*

biennī-um, i, n. [biennī-us for bi-ann-ius, fr. bi (= bis), "twice"; ann-us, "a year"] *A space or period of two years; two years.*

bipartīt-o, adv. [bīpartītus, "divided into two parts"] *In two divisions.*

bōnitas, ātis, f. [bōn-us, "good"] *The good, or superior, quality, of a thing; goodness, excellence.*

bōnus, a, um, adj.: *Good in the widest acceptance of the term. Kind, favourable.*

brāchium, ii, n. *An arm* [akin to βραχίον'].
brēvis, e, adj. *In time: Short, brief* [akin to βραχ-σύ].

C.

cādo, cēcidi, cāsum, cādere, 3 v. n.: *To fall, fall down.—To fall dead, die.*

cālāmitas, ātis, f. *Misfortune, disaster, calamity.*

cāpio, cēpi, captum, cāpēre, 3 v. a.: *To take in the widest sense of the term. Of a place: To reach, arrive at.*

captiv-us, i, m. [captiv-us (fr. cāpio, "to take"), "taken prisoner"] *A prisoner, captive.*

cāp-ut, itis, n.: *The head. A person, man, etc.*

carrus, i, m. *A two-wheeled cart for heavy loads.*

castel-lum, li, n. dim. [for castrum; fr. castrum, cast(e)ri] *A small fort; a castle, citadel, fortress, stronghold.*

castra, ōrum, n. plur. *A camp or encampment, as containing several soldiers' tents or huts* [prob. for skad-trum; akin to root skad, "to cover"].

cā-sus, sūs, m. [for cad-sus; fr. cād-o, "to fall out, happen"] *Chance, accident.*

cātēna, ae, f. *A chain, fetter.*

causa, ae, f. *A cause, reason. A cause, case.*

cāvēo cāvi, cautum, cāvēre, 2 v. n. *To be on one's guard; take care or precaution.*

cēlēr-itas, itātis, f. [celer. "swift"] *Swiftmess, speed, celerity.*

cēlēr-iter, adv. [id.] *Swiftly, speedily, quickly.*

censēo, ūi, um, ēre, 2 v. a. *Of the senate: To decree, resolve, ordain.*

cen-sus, sūs, m. [for cen-sus; fr. cens-ēo, "to make a return of property" for assessment] *An enumeration.*

centum, num. adj. indecl. *A hundred.*

centūrī-o, ōnis, m. [centūrī-a, "a century" or division of troops in the Roman armies] *A centurion.*

cer-tus, ta, tum, adj. [fr. CER- root of cer-no, "to decide"] *Sure, certain. Certiorem facere, (to make very sure, i.e.) to inform.*

cē-tēri, ētērae, ētēra, adj. plur. (rare in sing.) *The other, the rest; the remaining, remainder of.* As Subst.: **cē-tēri**, ōrum, m. plur. *The rest.*

cībārī-a, ōrum, adj. [cībārī-us (cibus, "food"), "pertaining to food"] *Provisions, victuals, food.*

cingo, cin-i, cinctum, cingēre, 3 v. a. *Of places as Objects: To surround, encircle, inclose.*

circ-iter, adv. (circ-us, "a circle") *Of number: About, near, nearly.*

circū-tus, tūs, m. [circū-ēo, "to go around"] *A circuit, compass, circuitous route.*

circum, prep. gov. acc. [prob. adverbial acc. of circus, "a ring"] *Around, round about, all round.*

circum-do, dēdi, dātum, dāre, 1 v. a. [circum, "around"; do, "to put"] *To surround, inclose.*

circum-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcēre, 3 v. a. [circum, "around"; dūco, "to lead"] *To draw around.*

circum-sisto, stēti, no sup., sistēre, 3 v. n. [circum, "around"; sisto, "to stand"] *To stand around.*

circum-vēnio, vēni, ventum, vēnīre, 4 v. a. [circum, "around"; vēnio, "to come"] *With accessory notion of hostility: To surround, enclose on all sides, beset.*

citer, tra, trum, adj. [for cis-ter; fr. cis, "on this side"] *On this side, hither.*

cītērior, us; see citer.

cit-ra, prep. gov. acc. citer. citr-i, "on this side" *On this side of.*

citr-o, adv. [id.] *Hither;—only in connection with ultro; hither and thither, to and fro.*

civ-itas, itātis, f. [civ-is, "a citizen"] *Citizenship. A state, commonwealth.*

clau-do, si, sum, dēre, 3 v. a.: *To shut, shut up. To close, end, finish: claudere agmen, (to close the line of march i.e.) to bring up the rear* [root clu-, "to shut"]

clī-ens, entis, comm gen. [for clu-ens, which is also found; fr. clū-ēo, "to hear"] *A dependant adherent.*

co-ēmo, ēmi, emptum, ēmēre, 3 v. a. [co (=cum), in "intensive" force; ēmo, "to buy"] *To buy up, buy, purchase.*

coep-īo, i, tum, ēre and isse, 3 v. n. and a. [contracted fr. co-āpio; fr. co = cum], in "augmentative" force; āpio, "to lay hold of"] *To begin to do.*

cō-ercēo, erēni, ercitum, ercēre, 2 v. a. [for co-arcēo; fr. co (=cum), in "intensive" force; arcēo, "to enclose"] *To restrain, hold in check.*

cō-gīto, gītāvi, gītātum, gītāre, 1. v. a. [contr. fr. co-agito; fr. co (=cum), in "intensive" force; agito, "to put in motion"] *To weigh thoroughly in the mind; to ponder, reflect upon, think.*

co-gnosco, gnōvi, gnītum, gnoscēre, 3. v. a. [co (=cum), in "augmentative" force; gnosco (=nosco), "to become acquainted with"] *To become thoroughly acquainted with, learn, make inquiry about.* In perf. tenses: *To have knowledge of, to know.*

cōgo, cōgēi, cōactum, cōgēre, 3. v. a. [contr. fr. co-ago; fr. co (=cum), "together"; āgo, "to drive"] *To collect, assemble. To force, compel.*

cōhors, tis f. A cohort; the tenth part of a Roman legion.

cōhortor, hortātus sum, hortāri, 1. v. dep. [co (=cum), in "strengthening" force; hortor, "to exhort"] *To exhort; to encourage, animate.*

col-līgo, ligāvi, ligātum, ligāre, 1. v. a. [for con-līgo; fr. con (=cum), "together"; ligo, "to bind or fasten"] *To pin together by means of something driven through two or more things.*

collis, is, m. [c-l. "high"] A hill.

col-lōco, locāvi, locātum, locāre, 1. v. a. [for con-lōco; fr. con (=cum), in "intensive" force; lōco, "to place"] *To put, place, or station any where. To place a woman in marriage; i. e., to give a woman in marriage.*

collōqu-ium, ii, n. [collōquor, "to confer with"] A conference.

col-lōquor, lōquūtus sum, lōqui, 3. v. dep. [for con-lōquor; fr. con (=cum), "together"; lōquor, "to talk"] *To talk together or with a person; to hold a conference, confer with.*

com-būro, bussi, bustum, būrēre, 3. v. a. [com (=cum), in "intensive" force; būro (=uro), "to burn"] *To burn up, to consume by fire.*

commēa-tus, tūs, m. [commē(a)-o, "to go to and fro"] Provisions supplies.

com-mēmōro, mēmōrāvi, mēmōrātum, mēmōrāre, 1. v. a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; mēmōra "to mention"] *To make mention of, recount, relate.*

com-mēo, mēāvi, mēātum, mēāre, 1. v. n. [com (=cum), in "intensive" force; mēo, "to go"] *To go, come, travel, etc. frequently to a place.*

com-mīnus, adv. [com (=cum), "together"; mīnus, "hand"] *Hand to hand, in el-se fight or contest.*

com-mitto, misi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [com (=cum), "together"; mitto, "to cause to go"] Of battle: *To engage*

in, commence. With Dat.: *To trust in trust.* With ut and Subj.: *To give occasion, or cause, that; to effect that.*

commōd-e, adv. [commodus], "convenient"] *Conveniently, suitably, readily.*

com-mōd-us, a um, adj. [com (=cum), "with"; mod-us, "a measure"] *Convenient suitable.*

com-mōn-e-fācio, fēci, factum, fācēre, 3. v. a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; mōn-ēo, "to cause to think"; (e) connecting vowel: fācio, "to make"] *To remind forcibly, put in mind, impress.*

com-mōvēo, mōvi, mōtum, mōvēre, 2. v. a. [com (=cum), in "intensive" force; mōvēo, "to move"] *To move greatly or thoroughly. Mental y: To disturb, affect, disquiet. To bring about, force.*

com-mūnio, mūnivi or mūnii, mūnītum, mūnīre, 4. v. a. [com (=cum), in "intensive" force; mūnio, "to fortify"] *To fortify strongly or on all sides.*

com-mūnis, mūne, adj. [com (=cum), "together"; perhaps, mūnis, "serving"] *Common, general.*

commūtā-tio, tiōnis, f. [commut(a)-o, "to change entirely"] A changing, change, alteration.

com-mūto, mūtāvi, mūtātum, mūtāre, 1. v. a. [com (=cum), in "intensive" force; mūto, "to change"] *To change wholly, alter.*

com-pāro, pārāvi, pārātum, pārāre, 1. v. a. [com (=cum), "together"; pārō, "to bring or put"] *To make or get ready, prepare. Acquire, procure.*

com-pēr-īo, i, tum, ire 4. v. a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; root PER, akin to per-īor, "to pass through"] *To find out accurately; to ascertain, learn.*

complector, plexus sum, plecti, 3. v. dep. [com (=cum), "with"; plect, "to entwine"] *To embrace, clasp.*

com-plēo, plēvi, plētum, plēre, 2. v. a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; plēo, "to fill"] Sometimes with Abl.: *To fill completely or entirely with.*

com-plūres, plūra (and sometimes plūria), adj. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; plures, "very many"] *Very many, several.*

com-porto, portāvi, portātum, portāre, 1. v. a. [com (=cum), "together"; porto, "to carry"] *To carry together, convey, collect.*

cōnā-ta, ōrum, n. plur. (sing. prob. not found) [cōn(a)-o, "to attempt"] *Attempts, endeavours, efforts.*

cōnā-tus, tūs, m. [id.] *An attempt, endeavour, effort.*

con-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdere, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; cēdo, "to yield"] *To grant, allow, yield, concede.* Impers. pass.: *Con-cēdi, that it should be conceded or allowed.*

con-cido, cidi, cisum, cīdere, 3. v. a. [for con-caedo; fr. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; caedo, "to cut"] *To cut up, slay, kill, destroy, etc.*

con-cili-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [con-ili-um, "union"] *To bring about, procure, gain.*

con-cili-um, ii, n. [for concāl-ium; fr. con (=cum), "together"; cāl-o, "to call"] *A meeting, assembly, council.*

con-clāmo, clāmāvi, clēmātum, clāmāre, 1. v. a. [con. (=cum), in "intensive" force; clamo, "to cry out"] *To cry out aloud; to exclaim, shout out.*

con-curro, curri (rarely cūcurri), cursum, currere, 3. v. n. [con (=cum) "togeth er"; curro, "to run"] *To run together or in a body.*

concur-sus, sūs, m. [for concurr-sus; fr. concurr-o, "to run together"] *A running together.*

cond-itio, itionis, f. [cond-o, "to put together"] *State, or condition, of a person. An agreement, terms.*

con-dōno, dōnāvi, dōnā u'n, dōnāre, 1. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; dōno, "to give" as a present] *To forgive, remit, overlook, condone.*

con-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcere, 3. v. a. [co (=cum), "together"; dūco, "to lead"] *To assemble, collect.*

confēro, contāli, collātum, confer e, v. a. irreg. [con (=cum); fēro, "to hear"] [cum, "together"] *To bear, or bring together; to collect, gather. To compare, [cum, in "augmentative" force] lay to the charge of, thrown upon one.*

confer-tus, ta tum, adj. [for confere-tus; fr. confercio, "to cram or press close together"] *Crowded together, closely packed.*

con-ficiō, fēcī, fectum, ficere, 3. v. n. [for con-facio; fr. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; faciō, "to do or make"] *To prepare. To bring about, accomplish.*

con-fido, fisus sum, fidere, 3. v. n. semi-dep. [con (=cum), in "intensive" force; fido, "to trust"] *With Dat. To trust, repose confidence in.*

con-firm-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; firm-us, "strong"] *To strengthen, establish, confirm. To encourage. To assert, affirm, declare.*

con-grēdiōr, gressus, sum, grēdi, 3. dep. [for con-gradior; fr. con. (=cum),

"together with"; grādior, "to step"] *In a friendly sense: To meet with one. To engage, come into collision, fight.*

con-jīciō, jēcī, jectum, jicere, 3. v. a. [for con-jacio; fr. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; jacio, "to cast"] *Of weapons: To hurl, throw, cast. Of persons: To throw into chains.*

con-jungo, junxi, junctum, jungere, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), "together"; jungo, "to join"] *To join together, unite.*

conjūrā-tiō, tiōnis, f. [conjur(a-o, "to swear together"); hence, "to conspire, plot"] *A conspiracy, plot.*

cōnor, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. *To endeavour, try, attempt.*

con-qui-ro, quisivi, quisitum, quīrere, 3. v. a. [for con-quaero; fr. con, in "augmentative" force; quaero, "to seek"] *To seek after, or search, out earnestly or carefully.*

con-sanguin-ēus, ēa, eum, adj. [con (=cum), denoti g "corresponden e"; sanguis, sanguin-is, "blood"] *Related by blood, kin.*

con-scisco, scīvi, scītum, sciscere, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; scisco, "to decree"] *With mortem sibi, (to decree death to one's self, i. e.) To kill, or destroy, one's self; to commit suicide.*

con-sci-us, a, um, adj. [con. "with"; sci-o, "to know"] *Conscious.*

con-scribo, scripsi, scriptum, scribere, 3. v. a. [con, "together"; scribo] *Of soldiers, etc.: To enroll, enlist, levy.*

concen-sus, sūs, m. [for consent-sus; fr. consent-io, "to agree"] *Agreement, consent.*

con-sēquor, sequūtus sum, sēqui, 3. v. dep. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sequor, "to follow"] *To follow, follow after. In hostile sense: To pursue. To obtain.*

con-sido, sēdi, sessum, sīdere, 3. v. n. [con (=cum), "together"; sīdo, "to sit down"] *Of troops: To take one's station; to encamp. To take up an abode, to settle.*

consilium, ii, n. *A plan, purpose, design. An assembly; a council of war.*

con-sisto, stiti, stitum, sistere, 3. v. n. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sisto, "to set one's self," i. e. "to stand"] *To take one's stand; to remain, stand still. Of troops: To take up a position.*

con-sōlor, sōlātus sum, sōlāri, 1. v. dep. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sōlor, "to comfort"] *To comfort, console.*

conspēc-tus, tūs, m. [conspēc-io, through root SPEC] *Sight, view.* In *conspēc-tu*, *before the eyes, or in the presence, of some one.*

con-spēc-io, pexi, spectum, syñēre, 3. v. a. [for con-spēc-io; fr. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; spēc-io, "to see"] *To see, behold, observe.*

con-spēc-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [for con-spēc-io; fr. con (=cum), in "intensive" force; SPEC, root of spēc-io, "to see"] *To see, behold, get a sight of, descry.*

constant-ia, iae, f. [constans, constant-is, "standing firm"] *Of character, etc.: Firmness, steadfastness, constancy.*

con-stītūō, stītūi, stītūtum, stītāre, 3. v. a. [for con-stātuo; fr. con (=cum); stātūō, "to place"] [con, "together"] *To draw up an army or fleet in order of battle; to post troops, etc.* [con, in "augmentative" force] *To put, place, set, station, regulate, set in order, fix, appoint, resolve, determine, decide.*

consūē-sco, vi, tum, scēre, 3. v. n. inch [consūē-o, "to be accustomed"] *To accustom one's self.* In perf. tenses: *To accustom one's self, i.e. to be accustomed, or wont.*

consūē-tūdo, tūdinis, f. [for consuet-tūdo; fr. consūēt-us, "accustomed"] *Custom, habit, use, usage.*

consul, ūlis, m. *A consul; one of the two chief magistrates of the Roman state, chosen annually after the expulsion of the kings.*

consūl-ātus, ātus, m [consul] *The office of a consul; the consulship.*

consūlo, ūi, tum ēre, 3. v. n. *To take, counsel, deliberate, consult.*

consul-tum, ti, n. [consul-o "to determine upon"] *A resolution, decree.*

con-sūmo, sumpsī, sumptum, sūm-ēre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "intensive" force; sūmo, "to take"] *To annihilate, destroy, bring to nought, waste.*

con-tendo, tendi, tentum, tendēre, 3. v. n. and a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; tendo, "to stretch"] *Neut.: To make an effort or endeavour; to exert one's self, endeavour.* *Act.: To strive eagerly after, exert one's self zealously for.* With accessory notion of hostility: *To strive, contend, struggle.*

conten-tio, tiōn s. f. [for contend-tio; fr. contend-o, "to contend"] *A contention, contest.*

contīnen-ter, adv. [for continent-er, fr. continens, continent-is, "continuous"] *In time: Continuously, without interruption.*

con-tīnēō, tīnui, tentum, tīnēre, 2. v. a. [for con-tēnēō fr. con (=cum), "together"; tenēō, "to hold"] *Of places: In Pass.: To be surrounded, encompassed, or enclosed by, occupy, restrain.*

con-tingo, tīgi, tactum, tīgēre, 3. v. a. and n. [for contango; fr. con (=cum), in "intensive" force; tango, "to touch"] *Act.: To touch, reach, extend to.* *Neut.: To happen or chance; to fall out, come to pass.*

contīn-ūsus, ūa, ūum, adj. [contīn-ēō, "to hold together"] *Successive, in succession.*

contra, adv. and prep. *Adv.:* "Over against"; hence) *On the other side, on the other hand, in return, in reply; in opposition, on the contrary, against.*

con-trāho, traxi, tractum, trāhēre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), "together"; trāho, "to draw"] *To draw, or bring together; to collect, assemble.*

contūmēl-ia, iae, f. [contūmēō, through absol adj. contūmēl-us, "swelling greatly"] *Insult, affront, contumely.*

con-vēnio, vēni, ventum, vēnīre, 4. v. n. [con (=cum), "together"; venio, "to come"] *To come or meet together; to collect, assemble.*

conven-tus, tūs, m. [convēnio] ("A coming together"; hence) *An assembly, assemblage, meeting; a judicial assembly, a court of justice.*

con-verto, verti, versum, vertēre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "intensive" force; ver-to, "to turn"] *To turn, or turn round; to wheel round.* *Pass. in reflective force: To turn one's self round, turn round; change, alter.*

con-vinco, vici, victum, vincēre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "intensive" force; vinco, "to conquer"; hence, "to show or prove, conclusively"] *To show, or prove, very conclusively.*

con-vōco, vōcāvī, vōcātum, vōcāre, 1. v. a. [con (=cum), "together"; vōco, "to call"] *To call together; to convene, convoke, summon.*

cō-p-ia, iae, f. [contr. fr. co-op-ia; fr. co (=cum), in "augmentative" force; ops, ōp-is, "means," etc.] *Plur.: Forces, troops. Resources, supplies.*

cōpī-ōsus, ōsī, ōsum, adj. [cōpī-a, "plenty"] *Furnished abundantly, or well supplied with a thing; abundantly in wealth, rich.*

c-or-am, adv. [contr. fr. co-or-am; fr. co. (=cum), in "augmentative" force; os, or is, "the face"] *Personally, in person.*

cornu, ūs, n. *Of an army: A wing.*

corp-us, ōris, n. [root CRE, in creare, "to make"] *The body.*

crēmo, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To burn*. [root CAR, "hard"; cp. car-bo, carina].

crēo, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To make a person something, e.g. king, consul, etc.; to create, appoint, etc.* [akin to root CRE, "to make"]

crē-sco, vi, tu-ī, scēre, 3. v. n. [akin to crēo] *To increase; to become greater or larger*.

crī-nis, nis, m. [for crē-nis; fr. CRE, root of cre-sco, "to grow"] *The hair of the head; in. plu.: the locks*.

cruciā-tus, tūs, m. [cruci a]o, "to torture"] *Torture*.

crūdēl-itas, itātis, [crūdēl-is, "cruel"] *Cruelty*.

crūdēl-iter, adv. [id.] *Cruelty, with cruelty*.

cultus, tūs, m. [for col-tus; fr. cōl-o, "to cultivate"] *Mode, or manner, of living*.

cum, prep. gov. abl.: *With; together, or along with*. In composition, (also com, co): *With; together*. In "augmentative" or "intensive" force, to denote completeness, a high degree, etc.

cūpīd-e, adv. [cupīd-us, "eager"] *Eagerly, zealously, passionately*. Comp.: *Too eagerly*.

cūpīd-itas, itātis, f. [id.] *A longing desire, eagerness*.

cūpīd-us, ida, idum, adj. [cūp-īo] With Gen. or Gerund in di. *Desirous of, desiring, eager for*.

cūp-īo, īvi or īi, itum, ēre, 3. v. n. With Dat.: *To wish well to, to be favorably disposed towards*.

cu-r (anciently **quor**), adv. [contracted], acc to some, fr. quare (=quā re); acc. to others, fr. cui rei] *Why; wherefore*.

cūr-a, ae, f. [for coer-a, fr. coer-o, old form of quaer-o, "to seek"] *Care, solicitude, attention*.

cūr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [cūr-a, "care"] With Acc. and Gerundive: *To take care, order, or cause, that something be done, etc.; to get or have, something done*.

cur-sus, sūs, m. [for cursus; fr. cur-ro, "to run"] *A running, speed, course*: cursum adaequare, (to make equal their running, i.e.) *to keep up with the pace of the horses*.

cus-tos, tōdis, comm. gen. *A guard, keeper*.

D.

damn-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [damn-um, in the meaning of "a penalty"] *To condemn*.

dē, prep. gov. Abl.: *From, away from*. In the course of, during, in. Of, about, concerning, respecting. From, out of, from among a number of persons, etc. Of a cause, reason, etc.: *From, for*.

dē-bēo, būi, bitum, bēre, 2. v. a. [confr. fr. dē-hābēo; fr. dē, "from"; hābēo, "to have"] *To owe*. With Inf.: *To be bound to do, etc.; I, etc., ought to do*.

dē-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdere, 3. v. a. [de, "away"; cēdo, "to go"] *To go away, or depart; to withdraw*.

dēc-em, num. adj. indecl. *Ten*:—decem novem, nineteen.

dēcerto, certāvi, certātum, certāre, 1. v. n. [dē, in "strengthening" force; certo, "to contend"] *To contend, or fight vigorously or earnestly*.

dēcīdo, cīdi, no sup., cīdere, 3. v. n. [for de-cādo; fr. de, "down"; cado, "to fall"] *To fall down*.

dēc-imus, īma, imum, adj. num. adj. [dēc-em, "ten"] *Tenth*.

dē-cīpīo, cēpi, ceptum, cīpēre, 3. v. a. [for dē-cāpio; fr. de, in "strengthening" force; capio, "to take"; hence, in bad sense, "to deceive"] *To deceive*.

dē-clāro, clārāvi, clārātum, clārāre, 1. v. a. [de, "completely"; clār-o, "to make clear"] *To announce, declare, etc.*

dēcūrī-o, ōnis, m. [dēcūrī-a, "a troop of ten (horse-)soldiers"] *The commander of a decuria*.

dēdīt-itiūs, itīi, m. [dēd-o, sup. dēdit-um, "to surrender"] *One who has surrendered or capitulated*.

dēd-ītīo, itīōnis, f. [dēd-o, "to surrender"] *A surrender*.

dē-do, didi, dītum, dēre, 3. v. a. [dē, "away from"; do, "to put"] *To give up to one; to surrender*.

dē-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcere, 3. v. a. dē, "away" dūco, "to lead"] *To lead or draw off, withdraw*.

dē-fātīgo, fātīgāvi, fātīgātum, fātīgāre, 1. v. a. [dē, denoting "completeness"; fatigo, "to weary"] *To weary thoroughly, weary out, exhaust*.

de-fendo, fendi, fensum, fendere, 3. v. a. [dē, "away from"; absol. fendo, "to strike"] *To ward off. To protect, defend*.

dē-fētīscor, fessus sum, fētīsci, 3. v. dep. inch. [for dē-fatīscōr; fr. dē, in "strengthening" force; fātīscor, "to grow faint"] *To become quite faint or weary*.

dē-inde (trīsyll.), adv. [dē, "from"; inde, "thence"] *Of time: In the next place, afterwards, after that*.

dē-jácio, jēcī, jectum, jēcēre, 3. v. a. [for dē-jācio; fr. de, "down"; jácio, "to throw"] *To throw or cast down.* De-jecti eā spe, (thrown down from that hope, i.e.) *disappointed in that hope.*

dē-libēro, libērāvī, libērātum, libērāre, 1. v. a. [for dē-libro; fr. dē, in "strengthening" force; libro, "to poise or weigh"] *To weigh well in one's mind; to ponder, deliberate, consider.*

dē-ligo, ligāvi, ligātum, ligāre, 1. v. a. [dē, "down"; ligo, "to bind"] *To bind down; to bind fast, fasten.*

dē-ligo, lēgi, lectum, lēgēre, 3. v. a. [for dē-lēgo; fr. de, "out"; lēgo, "to choose"] *To choose out, select, pick out.*

dē-minūo, minūi, minūtum, minūēre, 3. v. a. [dē, in "strengthening" force; minūo, "to make less"] *To make less; to lessen, diminish.*

dēmīssus, a, nm, P. perf. pass. of demitto. Of localities: *Low-lying, low.* Of the head: *Bowed down, drooping.*

dē-mitto, mīsi missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [dē, "down"; mitto, "to let go"] *To let, or allow, to go down; to lower, let fall.*

dē-monstro, monstrāvi, monstrātum, monstrāre, 1. v. a. [dē, in augmentative" force; monstro, "to show"] *To show, point out.*

dēmum, adv. [a lengthened form of the demonstrative particle dem, in i-dem, tan-dem] *At last, at length.*

dē-nēgo, nēgāvi, nēgātum, nēgāre, 1. v. a. [dē, in "intensive" force; nēgo, "to deny"] *To refuse.*

dē-ni, nae, na, num. distrib. adj. [for dec-ni; fr. dec-em, "ten"] *Ten each.*

dēnī-que, adv. [for dein-que; fr. dēin, "then"; quē, "and"] *At last, at length.*

dē-nuntio, nuntīāvī, nuntīātum, nuntīāre, 1. v. a. [dē, "from"; nuntio, "to send a message"] *To intimate, announce. To menace, threaten.*

dē-perdo, perdidi, perditum, perdēre, 3. v. a. dē, denoting "complete-ness"; perdo, "to lose"] *To lose entirely or completely.*

dē-pōno, pōnūi, pōsitum, pōnēre, 3. v. a. [dē, "down"; pōno, "to put"] *To put or lay down in a place. To lay aside.*

dē-pōpūlo, pōpūlāvī, pōpūlātum, pōpūlāre, 1. v. a. [dē, in "strengthening" force; populo, "to ravage"] *To ravage utterly; to lay waste, etc.*

dēprēcātor, tōris, m. (deprec(a)-or, "to intercede with") *An intercessor.*

dē-sēro, serti, sertum, serēre, 3. v. a. [dē, in "negative" force; sēro, "to join"] *To forsake, abandon, desert.*

dē-signo, signāvi, signātum, signāre, 1. v. a. [de, "out"; signo, "to mark"] *To denote, point out or at.*

dē-sisto, stiti, stitum, sistēre, 3. v. n. [dē, "away from"; sisto, "to set one's self, stand"]

despērātio, ōnis, f. *despair.*

despēro, āre, āvi, ātum, v. act. neut. *To despair.*

despīcio, ēre, speci, spectum, v. act. *To look down upon.*

destitūo, ēre, ui, ūtum, v. act. *To desert.*

destringo, ēre, strīxi, strictum. *To unsheathe.*

desum, esse, fui, v. n. *To be wanting.*

desuper, adv., *from above.*

detērior, us, comp. *worse.*

dētērrēo, ēre, ūi, ūtum, v. act., *frighten.*

detestor, āri, atus, sum. V. act.: *To call the gods to witness.*

detinēo, ēre, in tentum, V. act.: *To keep back.*

detrāho, ēre, traxi, tractum. V. act.: *To draw away, withdraw.*

detrūdo, īre, trūsi, trūsum. V. act.: *To thrust off.*

deturbo, arē, āvi, atūm. V. act.: *To cast down.*

deus, i. M.: *A god.*

deveho, ēre, vxi, vectūm. V. act.: *To carry away.*

dexter, ēra, ērum. Adj.: *Right.*

dies, ēi, m. (in sing. sometimes f.) *A day.* Diem ex die ducere, (kept deferring day after day: i.e. kept putting him off from day to day [akin to dir, "bright"])

diffēro, distūli, dilātum, differre, v. n. [for dis-fēro; fr. dis, "apart"; fēro, "to carry"] *To differ, be different.*

difficilis, ficile, adj. [for dis-facilis; fr. dis, in "negative" force; facilis, "easy"] *Not easy, hard, difficult.*

dignītas, itātis, f. [dign-us, "worthy"] *Dignity.*

diligentīa, iae, f. [diligens, diligent-is, "earnest"] *Carefulness, attentiveness, earnestness, diligence.*

di-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [di=dis, "apart"; mitto, "to send"] *To send away; dismiss.*

dirīmo, ēmi, emptum, imēre, 3. v. a. [for dis-emo; fr. dis, "apart"; ēmo, "to take"] Of a conference, etc.: *To break up, put an end to.*

dis-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdere, 3. v. a. [dis, "apart"; cedo, "to go"] *To go away, depart, withdraw.*

discipl-īna, īnae, f. [for discipul-īna; fr. discipul-us, "a learner"] *Discipline.*

disco, didici, no sup., discere, 3. v. a. *To learn* [akin to root dic, "to show"; cf. dico].

dis-jīcio, jēci, jectum, jicere, [3. v. a. [for dis-jācio; fr. dis, "asunder"; jācio, "to throw"]] *To disperse, scatter, rout.*

dī-spergo, spersi, spersum, spergere, 3. v. a. [for dī-spargo; fr. dī = dis, "in different directions"; spargo, "to scatter"] *To scatter in different directions; to disperse.*

dis-pōno, pōsi, pōsitum, pōnere, 3. v. a. [dis, "in different directions"; pōno, "to place"] *Of troops: To set in order, draw up, post, dispose.*

dī-tio, tiōnis, f. [prob. for de-tio; fr. do, "to put", through root DE] With reference to the person under whom one places one's self: *Dominion sway authority.*

dūn, adv. [Adverbial Abl. of obsol. dius (=dies), "a day"] *For a long time; a long while.*

dīūturn-itas, itātis, f. dīūturn-us, "of long duration" *Long duration or continuance; length.*

dīū-turnus, turna, turnum, adj. [diu, "a long while"] *Of long duration; long, prolonged.*

dī-urnus, urna, urnum, adj. [di-es, "day"] *Of, or belonging to, the day; by day.*

dīv-es, itis, adj. "Shining"; hence) *Rich, wealthy* [akin to root div, "to shine"].

di-vīdo, vīsi, vīsum, videre, 3. v. a. ("To part asunder"; hence) *To divide, separate*; root vid, "to part or divide".

do, dōdi, dātum, dāre, 1. v. a. *To give* in the widest acceptance of the term [akin to root DA].

dō-cēo, ūi, tum, ēre, 2. v. n. [akin to dic-o] *To teach, instruct, inform, show, tell, etc.*

dōl-ēo, ūi, tum, ēre, 2. v. n.: *To be in pain. To grieve, sorrow.*

dōl-or, ōris, m. [dōl-ēo, "to grieve"] *Grief, sorrow.*

dōl-us, i. m. *Craft, fraud, guile, deceit.*

dōm-i-cil-ium, ii, n. [for dōm-i-cil-ium; fr. dōm-us, "abode"; (i) connecting vowel; root cil = καλ, in καλ-πτω, "to conceal"] *A habitation, dwelling, domicile.*

dōmi, **dōmo**, **dōmo**; see dōmus.

dōmus, i and ūs, f. *A dwelling, house, abode.* Adverbial Gen. of place: **dōmi**, *At home.* **domo**, *From home.* After verbs of motion: **dōmum**, *To the house, home, homewards.*

dōn-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [don-um, "a present"] *To give as a present; to present.*

dūbītā-tio, tiōnis, f. [dubit(a)-o, "to doubt"] *A doubting; doubt, hesitation.*

dūb-ito, itāvi, itātum, itāre, 1. v. n. intens. [primitive form dū-bo, fr. dū-o, "two"] *To hesitate, doubt, be in doubt.*

dūb-ius, ia, ium, adj. [ob-ol. dūb-o, "to move two ways, vibrate to and fro"; fr. dūo, "two"] *Doubtful, uncertain.*

dū-cent-i, ae, a, num. adj. plur. [dū-o, "two"; cent-um, "a hundred"] *Two hundred.*

dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcere, 3. v. a. *To draw, lead, conduce, bring forward* in the widest sense. Of a commander: *To lead, move, or march troops, etc. To influence, induce, move, affect. To reckon, regard, consider, deem.*

dum, adv. [akin to diu] *While, whilst, while that. Until, until that.*

dū-o, ae, o, num. adj. plur. *Two.*

dūō-decim, num. adj. plur. indecl. [for dūo-dēcem; fr. duo, "two"; decem, "ten"] *Twelve.*

dūr-us, a, um, adj. *Hard, severe, toilsome, difficult.*

dux, dūcis, comm. geh. [for duc-s; fr. dūc-o, "to lead"] *A leader, guide, conductor. Of troops, etc.: a leader, commander, general.*

E.

e; see ex.

ē-do, didi, ditum, dēre, 3. v. a. [ē(=ex), "out"; do, "to put"] *To put out or forth.*

ē-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcere, 3. v. a. [ē(=ex), "out"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead out or forth.*

ef-fēmīn-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for ex-fēmīn-o; fr. ex, denoting "change"; fēmīn-a, "a woman"] *To render effeminate, enervate.*

effēro, extūli, elātum, efferre, v. a. irreg. [for ex-fēro; fr. ex, "out"; fēro, "to bear"] *To spread abroad; publish, proclaim.*

ēf-fīcio, fēci, fectum, ficere, 3. v. a. [for ex-fācio; fr. ex, "out"; fācio, "to make"] With double Acc.: *To make or render an object that which is expressed by the second Acc.*

ēgo, Gen. mēi (plur. **nos**), pers. pron.

ē-grādīor, gressus sum, grēdi, 3. v. dep. [for ē-grādior; fr. e (= ex), "out"; grādior, "to step"] *To go out or come forth; to leave.*

ē-grēg-īus, īa, īum, adj. [ē (= ex), "from out of"; grex, grēg-is, "a flock"] *Excellent, eminent, etc.*

ē-mīgro, migrāvi, migrātum, migrāre, 1. v. n. [e (= ex), "from"; migro, "to depart"] *To depart from, emigrate.*

ē-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [ē (= ex), "away from"; mitto "to send"] *To throw away, cast aside or off.*

ēmo, ēmi, emptum, ēmere, 3. v. a. [emo, "to take"] *To buy, purchase.*

ēmōl-imentum, īmenti, n. [emol-lor, "to work out"] *Effort, exertion, labour, difficulty.*

ēnim, conj. *For.*

ē-nuntiō, nuntiāvi, nuntiātum, nuntiāre, 1. v. a. [e (= ex), "out"; nuntio, "to tell"] *To divulge, disclose, reveal.*

ēo, adv. [prob. for eom (= cum), old acc. sing. masc. of pron. is, "this that"] *Of place: To that place, thither, there. Of a cause or reason: For the cause, or reason, that follows; on that account.*

ēo, īvi or īi, ītum. īre. v. n. *To go* [root ī, akin to root ī, Gr. *ι-έvai*, "to go"].

ēōdem, adv. [foreomdem (= eundem), old acc. masc. sing. of idem, "the same"] *To the same place.*

ē-qu-ēs, ītis. m. [for equi-(t)s; fr. equus, "a horse"; (t) epenthetic; ī, root eo, "to go"] *A horseman; horse soldiers, cavalry.*

ēqu-ester, estris, estre, adj. [equus, "a horse"] *Pertaining to a horse; horse-, cavalry.*

ēquītā-tus, tūs m. [ēquit (a)-o, "to be an eques or horseman. Horse soldiers, cavalry.

ēquūs, ī, m. *A horse.*

ē-rīpiō, rīpui, reptum, alpēre, 3. v. a. [for ē-rāpiō; fr. ē (= ex), "away"; rāpio, "to snatch"] *To snatch away.* With Dat. of person and Acc. of thing: *To deprive one of something. To deliver, set free.*

ēt, conj. *And;—et . . . et, both . . . and.*

ētiam, conj. [akin to et] *And also, and furthermore; likewise, also, besides. Even.*

ētiamsi, conj. [etiam, "even"; si, "if"] *Even if, although.*

et-si, conj. [et, "even"; si, "if"] *Even if, although.*

ēvello, velli and vulsi, vulsum, vellēre. 3. v. a. [ē (= ex), "out"; vello, "to pluck"] *To pluck out, pull out.*

ex (ē), prep. gov. abl. *Of local relations: Out of. From. In accordance, or conformity with. Through, by. After.*

ex-cīpiō, cēpi, ceptum, cipēre, 3. v. a. [for ex-cāpio; fr. ex, "without force"; "to take"] *To take, receive. To intercept, encounter.*

exemplum, i. n.: *An example in the widest sense of the word. A way, manner, sort, kind.*

ex-ēo, īvi or īi ītum, īre, v. n. īr. [ex, "out or forth" ēo, "to go"] *To go out or forth, from.*

ex-ercēo, ercēti, ercētum, ercēre, 2. v. a. [for ex-arceo; fr. ex, "out"; arceo, "to enclose"] *To practice, exercise.*

exercitā-tiō, tiōnis, f. [exercit(a)o, "to exercise"] *Exercise, practice.*

exercitā-tus, ta, tum, adj. *Well, or fully exercised; trained, practiced.*

exercitus, itūs, m. [exercēo, "to exercise"] *A trained, exercised, or disciplined body of men; an army.*

existimā-tiō, tiōnis, f. [existim(a)-o, "to think"] *Opinion, judgment.*

ex-istimo, istimāvi, istimātum, istimāre, 1. v. a. [for ex-estimo; fr. ex, "without force"; estimo, "to think"] *To think, imagine, deem, suppose.*

expēdī-tus, ta, tum, adj. [expēdī-o, "to set free"] *Unencumbered. Without baggage, light-armed. Free from hindrances or impediments, easy.*

expēriōr, pertus, sum, pēriri, 4. v. dep. [ex, "thoroughly"; obsol. pērīor, "to go or pass through"; hence, "to try"] *To try, prove, put to the test.*

explōrā-tor, tōris, m. [explor(a)-o, "to spy out"] *A spy, scout.*

exprīmo, pressi, pressum, primēre, 3. v. a. [for ex-prēmo; fr. ex, "out"; prēmo, "to press"] *To extort, elicit.*

ex-pugno, pugnāvi, pugnātum, pugnāre, 1. v. a. [ex, "thoroughly" pugno, "to fight"] *To take by assault; to storm, capture.*

ex-quīro, quīsi, quīsitum, quīrēre, 3. v. a. [for ex-quaero; fr. ex, "very much"; quaero, "to seek for"] *To search out, ascertain.*

ex-sēquor, sēquūtus, sum, sēqui, 3. v. dep. [ex, denoting "to the end or close"; sēquor, "to follow"] *To follow up, carry out, enforce.*

ex-specto, spectāvi, spectātum, spectāre, 1. v. a. [ex, "very much"; specto, "to look out"] *To wait for, await, wait to see.*

ex-ter (tērus), tēra, tērum, adj. [ex- "out"] *On the outside, outward.*

extrā, prep. gov. acc. [contr. f. *extēra*, abl. sing. of *extērus*, "outward"] *Out, or outside, of; beyond*.

extrēmus, a, um, sup. adj.; see *exter*. As Subst.: **extrēmum**, i, n. *The end, extremity*.

ex-ūro, ūssi, ustum, ūrere, 3. v. a. [ex. denoting "completeness"; ūro, "to burn"] *To burn up, consume by fire*.

F.

Fābius, ii, m. [fab-a, "a bean"] *Fabius (Quintus Maximus)*; a Roman consul, who defeated the Arverni and Ruteni.

fācil-e, adv. [facilis, "easy"] *Easily, with ease*:—non facile, *not easily*, i. e. *with difficulty*.

fāc-ilis, ile, adj. [fāc-io, "to do"] *Easy, devoid of difficulty*.

fāc-inus, inōris, n. [fāc-io, "to do"] In bad sense: *A bad deed, crime*.

fāc-io, fēci, factum, fācere, 3. v. a. and n. Act.: a. *To make*, in the widest acceptance of the term:—proelium facere), *to make*, i. e., *to engage in battle*; so hoc proelio facto, *when this engagement had taken place*.

fac-tio, tiōnis, f. [fac-io, in the sense of "to take part, to side"] *A party, side, faction*.

fac-tum, ti, n. [fac-io, "to do"] *A deed, action, act*.

fācul-tas, tātis, f. [obsol. fācul (= fācil-is, "easy")] *Power, means, opportunity, Supply, abundance*. Plur.: *Means, resources, etc.*

fē-mes, mis, f. *Hunger, famine*; [akin to Gr. φαγ-ειν].

fāmil-ia, lae, f. [for fām-ūlia; fr. fām-ūl-us, "a servant"] *A family*.

fāmil-i-āris, āre, adj. [fāmil-i-a] *Of or belonging to a family*: res familiaris, *property*; *Intimate, friendly, on good terms, familiar*. As Subst.: **fāmil-i-āris**, is, m. *An intimate friend*.

fas, n. indecl. ("Divine law"; hence) *The will of the gods*: or it may be translated by the English adj. *Lawful, permitted, allowable*.

fā-tum, ti, n. [f(a)-or, "to speak"] *Destiny, fate*.

fāv-ēo, fāvi, fautum, fāv-ēre, 2. v. n. With Dat.: *To be well-disposed or favourable to; to favour*.

fēlic-itas, itātis, f. [felix, felic-is "fortunate"] *Good fortune, success*.

fē-re, adv. *Nearly, almost, about*.

fē-ro, tūli, lātum, ferre, v. a.: *To bear, to carry*: ferre signa, *see signum*. *To bear, submit to, put up with, suffer, tole-*

rate, endure, any person or thing that is unpleasant.

fer-rum, ri, n. *Iron*. *An iron implement of any kind*; esp. *a sword*.

fēr-us, a, um, adj. ["wild"; hence] *Fierce, savage* jakin to θήρ, Aeolic φήρ, "a wild animal"].

fīd-es, ēi, f. [fid-o, "to trust;"] *Trust, confidence, faith*. *Good faith, fidelity*. *Pledged or plighted faith*; a *promise, engagement, word*.

fil-ia, ae, f. [akin to filius] *A daughter*.

fil-ius, ii, m. [root fV, "to beget"; cf. fui, Gr. φύω] *A son*.

fīngo, finxi, fictum, fingere, 3. v. a. *To form, mould, fashion*.

fī-nis, nis, m. [probably for fid-nis, fr. findo, "to divide," through root rīd] Plur.: *Borders of a country*; and so, *territory, land, country included within borders*. *An end*.

fin-itim-us, itima, itimum, adj. [fin-is; see finis] *Bordering upon, adjoining, neighbouring*. As Subst.: **fīnitīmi**, ōrum, n. plur. *The neighbouring peoples*.

fio, factus sum, fieri, v. pass. irreg.: see facio] *To be made*. *To become*. *To happen, or come to pass*; *to be brought about*.

fīr-mus, ma, mum, adj. [for fer-mus, fr. fēr-o] *Strong*.

fīg-ito, itāvi, itātum, itāre, 1. v. a. *To demand earnestly* *To demand something earnestly of one*; *to press a person for something*.

fīō flēvi, flētum, flēre, 2. v. n. *To weep* [Gr. φλέμ, "to gush."

fīē-tus, tūs, m. [flē-o, "to weep"] *A weeping, lamentation*.

flō-re-ns, ntis, adj. [flō-re-o, "to flourish"] *Flourishing, prosperous*.

flū-men, minis, n. [flū-o, "to flow"] *A stream, river*.

flū-o, fluxi, fluxum, flū-ere, 3. v. n. *To flow* [akin to root PLV].

fō-re (= futurum esse), fut. inf. of sum. *Fore, uti, (that it would be, that; i.e.) that the result would be, that*.

for-tis, te, adj. *Brave, bold, courageous*.

fort-itūdo, itūdinis, f. *Courage, valour, bravery*.

fort-ūna, ūnae f. [fors, fortis, "chance"] *Fortune, whether good or bad*. Plur.: *Property, fortunes*.

fos-sa, ae, f. for fod-sa; fr. fōd-io, "to dig"] *A ditch, trench, fosse*.

frango, frēgi, fractum, frangere, 3. v. a. *To shatter, wreck, ruin* [akin to Gr. ῥήγνυμι, "break"].

frāter, tris, m. *A brother.*

frāter-nus, na, num, adj. [frater, "a brother"] *Of, or belonging to, a brother; fraternal.*

frig-us, ōris, n. [frigēo, "to be cold"] *Cold, coldness.*

fructū-ōsus, ōsa, ōsum, adj. [fruc-tus, (uncontr. gen.) fructus, "fruit."] *Abounding in fruit, fruitful, fertile, productive.*

fruc-tus, tūs, m. [for frugtus; fr. fru-or, "to enjoy," through root FRUOR] *An enjoying, enjoyment. Fruit, produce of the soil.*

frūment-ārius, āria, ārium, adj. [frument-um, "corn"] *Pertaining to corn; res frūmentāria, corn, provisions. Of places: Abounding in corn, corn-growing.*

frū-mentum, menti, n. [frūor, "to eat"] *Corn, grain. Plur.: Corn, i. e. crops.*

frux, frugis (mostly pl.), f. [for frug-s; fr. FRUG, a root of fruor, "to eat"] *Fruits of the earth; produce of the fields.*

fūg-a, ae, f. [fūgio, "to flee"] *Flight: in fugam conicere, (to throw into, i. e.) to put to flight, rout.*

fūgio, fūgi, fūgitum, fūgere, 3. v. n. *To flee, flee away, take to flight [akin to φύγ, root of φεύγω, "to flee."]*

fūgitiv-us, i, m. [fūgitiv-us "fleeing away"] *A runaway, fugitive.*

fundo, fūdi, fūsum, fundere, 3. v. a. *To rout, overthrow [akin to χέω, "to pour out"; χύσις, "a pouring out"].*

fūrōr, ōris, m. [ūr-o] *Rage, fury, madness.*

G.

gēnus, ōris, n. *A race, stock, family. Of things: Kind, sort [γένος].*

gēro, gessi, gestum, gerere, 3. v. a. *To do, perform, carry on. Of war: To wage.*

glādiūs, ii, m. *A sword.*

glōr-ia, iae, f. [akin to clārus, "illustrious"] *Glory, renown, fame.*

glōr-i-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [glori-a, "boasting"] *To glory, boast, vaunt, pride, one's self, brag.*

grandis, e, adj. *Great, large.*

grāt-ia, iae, f. [grāt-us, "pleasing"] *Favour, esteem, regard, kindness, shown by another to one's self; credit, influence. Favour shown by one's self to another; courtesy, kindness. Referre gratiam, to return a kindness, to make a return for kindness. For the sake, or purpose, of; on account of. Thanks;—*

in connection with agere only in plur., to thank.

grātūlā-tio, tiōnis, f. [gratul(a)-or] *Joy, rejoicing, congratulation.*

grāt-ūlor, ūlātus sum, ūlāri, 1. v. dep. [grāt-us, "pleasing"] *To wish one joy, to offer congratulations.*

grā-tus, ta, tum, adj. *Dear, pleasing, delightful [prob. akin to χαίρω (root χαρ), "to rejoice"].*

grāv-is, e, adj. *Heavy, weighty. Severe, serious, dangerous. Gravius vulnus, a very severe wound.*

grāv-iter, adv [grav-is, "serious"] *Heavily, seriously, severely.*

grāv-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [grāv-is, "heavy"] *To feel vexed, or annoyed, at; to do something reluctantly, etc.; to feel reluctant to do.*

H.

hāb-ēo, ūi, itum, ēre, 2. v. a. *To have, in the widest acceptance of the term; to hold, possess. To account, deem, consider. To hold, i. e. to do, make, perform, utter.*

hībern-a, ōrum, n. plur. [hibern-us, "winter"] *With elipse of castra, which is occasionally expressed: Winter-camp, winter-quarters.*

hic, haec, hoc: Gen. hūjus: Dat. huic. pron. dem. *This person or thing: As Subst.: Sing.: hic, m. This man, he: hoc, n. This thing, this. Plur.: hi, m. These persons or men. haec, n. These things. hoc, adverbial Abl.: On this account, for this reason: . . . hoc . . . quod, on this account . . . because.*

hic, adv. [1. hic] *In this place, here.*

hiēm-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. [hiēms, hīēm-is, "winter"] *To winter; to have, or take up, winter-quarters.*

hō-mo, mīnis, comm. gen. *A human being, a person; a man, woman.*

hōnes-tus, ta, tum, adj. [for honos-tus; fr. honos (= honor), "honour"] *Honourable.*

hōnor, (hōnos), ōris, m.: *Honour, respect, esteem, etc.: Public honour or distinction in recognition of services rendered to the state. Official dignity, office, post.*

hōnōr-ī-fic-us, a, um, adj. [for hon-or-i-fac-us; fr. hōnōr, hōnōr-is; (i) connecting vowel: fac-iō, "to do"] *That does honour to one; honourable.*

hōra, ae, f. *An hour.*

horrēo, no perf. nor sup., ēre, 2. v. a. *To shudder, or be frightened, at.*

hor-tor, tātus sum, tāri, 1. v. dep. *To strongly urge; to exhort, advise.*

hos-pes, pītis, m. *A visitor, friend, guest : An entertainer ; a host* [perhaps for hos-pit-s ; akin to Sans. root GHAS, "to eat" ; pēt-o, "to seek"]

hospit-ium, ii, n. [hospes, hospit-is] *Hospitality, entertainment.*

hos-tis, ti-s, comm. gen. *An enemy or, foe, of one's country.* Plur. : *The enemy* [prob, akin to Sans. root GHAS. "to eat"].

hūc, adv. [for hoc, adverbial neut. acc. of hic, "this"] *To this place, hither.*

hūmān-itas, itātis, f. [hūmān-us, "kind" ; also, "refined" in manners, etc.] ("The quality of the humanus" ; hence) *Kindness, humanity ; Courteous, or polished, manners ; refined behaviour.*

I.

ī-bi, adv. [pronominal root i] *In that place, there.*

ic-tus, tūs, m. [ic-o, "to strike"] *A stroke, blow.*

ī-dem, ēadem, īdem (Gen. ejusdem ; Dat. eīdem), pron. dem. [pronominal root i, with demonstrative suffix dem] "That very" ; hence) *The same.* As Subst. : **īdem**, ejusdem, n. *The same thing.* With a relative pron. : *The same that, or as.*

īdōneus, a, um, adj. *Fit, suitable, convenient.*

Id-ūs, ūm, f. plur. [prob. id-no, "to divide"] *The Ides ; the fifteenth day of the months March, May, July and October ; the thirteenth day of the remaining months.*

ignis, is (Abl. igni, chapters 4, 53) m. *Fire.*

i-gnō-ro, rāvi rātum rāre, [l. v. a. [for in-gno-ro ; fr. in, "negative" particle ; root g o ; whence no-sco, old form gno-sco, "to know"] *Not to know, or know of ; to be ignorant of ; to be unacquainted with.*

i-gnosco, gnōvi, gnōtum, gnoscere, 3. v. n. [for in-gnosco ; fr. in, "not" ; gnosco (= nosco), "to know"] With Dat *To pardon, forgive.*

il-le, la, lud (Gen. illius ; Dat illi), pron. adj. [for is-le ; fr. is] *That : As Subst. of all genders and both numbers : That person or thing ; he, she, it.*

illic, adv. [illic (pron.), "that"] *In that place, there.*

im-mortālis, mortāle, adj. [for im-mortālis ; fr. in, "not" ; mortālis, "mortal"] *Immortal, undying.*

impēdi-mentum, menti, n. [impedi-o] *A hinderance, obstacle, impediment.* Plur. : *The baggage of troops, etc.*

im-pēd-īo, īvi or īi. itum, īre, 4. v. a. [for in-pēd-īo ; fr. in, "in" ; pes, pēd-is, "the foot"] *To hinder, obstruct, impede.*

im-pello, pūli pulsum, pellere, 3. v. a. [for in-pello ; fr. in, "against" ; pello, "to drive"] *To push forwards ; To impel, urge, instigate.*

im-pendēo, no perf. nor sup., pendere, 2. v. n. [for in-pendeo ; fr. in, "upon or over" ; pendēo, "to hang down"] *To overhang.*

impērā-tor, tōris, m. [imper(a)-o, "to command"] *A commander, esp. a commander-in-chief.*

im-pēritus, pērita, pēritum, adj. [for in-pēritus, fr. in, "not" ; pēritus, "skilful"] With Gen. : *Unskilful, unskilled, or inexperienced in ; unversed in, not acquainted with.*

impēr-ium, ii, n. [imper-o, "to command"] *Command ; Supreme power, sovereignty, dominion, etc.*

impēro, pērāvi, pērātum, pērāre, 1. v. a. [for in-pāro ; fr. in, "upon" ; pāro, "to put"] *To command, order, enjoin, bid ; To be require to be furnished with something ; to make a requisition for, to demand.*

im-petro, pētrāvi, pētrātum, pētrāre, 1. v. a. [for in-patro ; fr. in, "without force" ; patro, "to perform"] *To get, obtain.*

impēt-us, ūs, m. [impēt-o, "to fall upon, or attack"] *An attack, assault, on-set.*

im-plōro, plōrāvi, plōrātum, plōrāre, 1. v. a. [for in-plōro ; fr. in, "upon" ; plōro, "to bewail" ; hence, "to cry out aloud"] *To beg, beseech, intreat, invoke, implore.*

im-pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, pōnere, 3. v. a. [for in-pōno ; fr. in, "upon" ; pōno, "to put"] With Dat. *To put or place upon ; to mount on horses. Of a tribute : To impose.*

im-porto, portāvi, portātum, portāre, 1. v. a. (for in-porto ; fr. in, "into" ; porto, "to carry or bring") *To carry or bring into a country, to import.*

im-prōbus, proba, prōbum, adj. [for in-prōbus ; fr. in, "not" ; prōbus, "good"] *Bad, abominable, wicked.*

imprōvis-o, adv. [imprōvisūs, "unforeseen"] *Unexpectedly, suddenly, on a sudden.*

impūn-e, adv. [impun-is, "unpunished"] *Without punishment, without harm or loss, with impunity.*

impūn-itas, itātis, f. [id.] *Freedom, or safety from punishment ; impunity.*

in, prep. gov. abl. and acc. : With Abl. : *In. Among.* With Gerunds or Gerundives : *In doing. On, upon. Upon.* Against. At. For. To, towards. After, according to.

incendo, di, sum, dēre 3. v. a. To set on fire, burn [for *in can-do*; fr. *in*, "in or into"; root *CAN*, akin to *κ-άω*, "to burn"].

in-cīdo, cīdi, cāsum, cīdēre, 3. v. n. [for *in-cādo*, "to fall"] With *in* and Acc. of person : *To fall into the hands of.*

in-cīto, citāvi, citātum, citāre, 1. v. a. [in, "without force"; *cīto*, "to set in rapid motion"] *To arouse, excite, incite.*

incōlo, cōltui, cultum, cōlēre, 3. v. a. [in, "in"; *colo*, "to dwell"] Act. : *To inhabit.* Neut. : *To dwell, reside.*

in-cōlūmis, cōlūme, adj. [in "in-intensive" force; obsol. *cōlūmis*, "safe"] *Quite, safe, safe, in safety.*

incommōd-um, i, n. [incommodus, "troublesome"] *Trouble, misfortune, disaster.*

incrēdibilis, crēdibile, adj. [in "not"; *crēdibilis*, "to be believed"] *Not to be believed, incredible, extraordinary.*

incūso, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for *in-caus-o*; fr. *in*, "against"; *caus-a*, "a charge"] *To blame, find fault with, censure.*

inde, adv. probably fr. pronominal root *i*; with *n*, epenthetic; *de*, suffix] Of place : *From that place or quarter, thence.* Of time : *After that.*

indic-ium, ii, n. [indic-o, "to make known"] ("A making known"; hence) *Information.*

in-dico, dixi, dictum, dicēre, 3. v. a. [in "augmentative" force; *dico*, "to say"] *To declare publicly; to proclaim, appoint*

indūco, dux ductum, dūcēre, 3. v. a. [in, "into"; *dūco*, "to lead"] *To move, excite, stimulate.*

indulgēo, ulsi, ultum, ulgēre, 2. v. With Dat. : *To be kind, or indulgent, to; to favour.*

in-erm-us, a, um adj. [for *in-arm-us*; fr. *in*, "not"; *arm-a*, "arms"] *Not having, or without, arms; unarmed.*

infēr-ior, ius, comp. adj. [infer-us, "that is below"] *Lower.*

infēro, tūli, (il)-lātum, ferre, v. a. [in; *fēro*, "to bear"; *in*, "into"] *To bear, carry, or bring, into or to; in, "against"; To bring or carry against:—bellum inferre (to carry war against one; i.e.) to to make war upon one, wage war against one;—so, inferre calamitatem or injuri-am, to inflict a calamity or injury; in-*

ferre vulnera, to inflict wounds; signa inferre, (to carry the standards against one; i.e.) to advance to the attack. Of a cause or reason : *To assign, allege.*

in-flecto, flexi, flexum, flectēre, 3. v. a. [in, "without force"; *flecto*, "to bend"] *To bend.* With Personal pron. in reflexive force : *Of things: To bend itself, become bent.*

in-flūo, fluxi, fluxum, flūcēre, 3. v. n. [in, "into"; *flūo*, "to flow"] Of a river : *To flow or run into; to empty itself into.*

in-gens, gentis, adj. [in, "not"; *gens*, "a race or kind"] *Vast, immense, huge.*

in-imicus, imica, imicūm, adj. [for *in-amicus*; fr. *in*, "not"; *amicus*, "friendly"] *Unfriendly, hostile, inimical.*

in-iquus, iqua, iquum, adj. [for *In-aequus*; fr. *in*, "not"; *aequus*, "just"] *Unjust.*

in-iti-um, tui, n. [in-īo, "to go in," through true root *ixi*] *A beginning, commencement.*

in-jicio, jeci, jectum, jicēre, 3. v. a. [for *in-jācio*; fr. *in*, "into"; *jācio*, "to throw"] Mentally : with Acc. of thing and Dat. of person, and in Pass. with Dat. of person alone : *To infuse something into one; to inspire one with some feeling.*

injūri-a, ae, f. [injūrius, "injurious"] *Unjust or wrongful conduct, injustice; a wrong, injury, etc.;—pro Helvetiorum injuriis Populi Romani, for the injuries of the Helvetii of (=against) the Roman people,*

in-jus-sus, sūs (only found in Abl. Sing.), m. [for *in-jub-sus*; fr. *in*, "not"; *jūb-ēo*, "to command"] *Without command.*

in-nascor, nātus sum, nasci, 3. v. dep. [in, "in"; *nascor*, "to be born"] Mentally : *To arise, or spring up, in the mind; to be produced.*

innōcent-ia, iae, f. [innōcens, innōcent-is, "innocent"] *Uprightness, integrity, innocence.*

inōp-ia, iae, f. [inops, inōp-is, "without means"] *Want, lack, scarcity.*

in-ōpina-ns, ntis, adj. [in, "not"; *opin(a)-or*, "to expect"] *Not expecting, off one's guard, unaware.*

in-qui-ro, quīsi, quīsitum, quīrēre, 3. v. a. [for *in-quaero*; fr. *in*, "without force"; *quaero*, "to seek"] Mentally : Without object to : *To enquire, make enquiries.*

in-sciens, scientis, adj. [in, "not"; *sciens*, "knowing"] *Unaware, without one's knowledge.*

in-sēquor, sēquūtus sum. sēqui, 3. v. dep. [in, "after or upon"; sēquor, "to follow"] *To follow after or close upon; to pursue, press upon the fleeing enemy.*

insīdiāe, iārum, f. plur. [insīd-ēo, "to take up a position in a place"] *An ambush, ambuscade. Artifice, plot, treachery.*

insign-e, is, n. [insign-is, "having a mark on it"] *A standard, ensign.*

in-sign-is, e, adj. [in, "upon"; signum, "a mark"] *Marked, remarkable, especial.*

in-sillio, sillui and sili, no sup., sillire, 4. v. n. [for in salio; fr. in, "upon"; salio, "to leap"] *To leap on, or upon.*

insolēn-ter, adv., for insolent-ter; fr. insolens, insolentis, "insolent"] *Insolently.*

instītūo, stītui, stītūtum, stītūere, 3. v. a. [for in-stātūo; fr. in, "without force"; stātūo, "to set"] *Of persons: To train up, instruct.*

instītū-tum, ti, n. [instītūo, "to institute"] *Institution, custom.*

insto, stiti, stātum, stāre, 1. v. n. [in, "upon"; sto, "to stand"] *To press hard, assail vigorously, etc. Of time: To be close at hand, to be very near.*

in-strūo, struxi, structum, strūere, 3. v. a. [in, "without force"; struo, "to build"] *Of troops: To arrange, draw up, form.*

intel-līgo, lexi, lectum, ligēre, 3. v. a. [for inter-lēgo; fr. inter, "between"; lēgo, "to choose"] *To perceive, understand, comprehend.*

inter, prep. gov. acc. *Between, among; inter se, among themselves, i. e. mutually, one with another. Of time: During.*

inter-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdere, 3. v. n. [inter, "between"; cēdo, "to go or come"] *Of time: To intervene. To be, or exist between.*

inter-clūdo, clūsi, clūsum, clūdēre, 3. v. a. [inter, "between"; clūdo (=claudo, "to shut") *To cut off persons from supplies.*

inter-dico, dixi, dictum, dicēre, 3. v. n. [inter, "between"; dico, "to speak"] *With Dat. of person and Abl. of place: To prohibit one from coming into a place; to shut one out from a place.*

inter-dū, adv. [inter, "during"; dies, "day"] *During the day, by day.*

interdum, adv. [inter, "at intervals"; dum] *Sometimes, occasionally.*

intēr-ēā, adv. [for intēr-ēam; fr. inter, "between"; ēam, acc. sing. fem. of is] *Of time: Meanwhile, in the meantime; cf. interim.*

inter-fīcīo, fēcī, fectum, ficēre, 3. v. a. [for inter-fācīo; fr. inter, "between"; facio, "to make"] *To destroy; esp. to kill, slay, slaughter.*

intēr-im, adv. [inter, "between"; im=eum, acc. masc. sing. of is] *Meanwhile, in the meantime.*

inter-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. and n. [inter, "apart"; mitto, "to make to go"] *To leave off, or discontinue, for awhile; to interrupt the doing of a thing: intermissā nocte, a night having intervened. Neut.: To leave a space or interval.*

internēc-īo, iōnis, f. [internēc-o, "to kill utterly"] *Utter destruction, extermination.*

inter-pell-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [inter, "between"; pello, "to drive"] *To obstruct, hinder, molest, disturb.*

inter-pōno, pōsi, pōsitum, pōnēre, 3. v. a. [inter, "between"; pōno, "to put"] *Of a pretext, reason, etc.: To allege, interpose.*

interpre, ētis, comm. gen. ["A go-between, agent"; hence] *An interpreter.*

inter-sum, fūi, esse, v. n. [inter, "between"; sum, "to be"] *Of space, etc.: To be between, intervene.*

inter-vallum, valli, n. [inter, "between"; vallum, "the mound" of a camp] *An interval of space; distance*

intrā, prep. gov. acc. [contr. fr. intērā, abl. sing. fem. of absol. intērus, "within"] *On the inside of, within.*

in-tūēor, tūitūs sum, tūēri, 2. v. dep. [in, "at or upon"; tūēor, "to look"] *To look at or upon; to cast the eyes down upon.*

in-vēnīo, vēni, ventum, vēnīre, 4. v. a. [in, "upon"; vēnīo, "to come"] *To find, discover, etc.*

in-victus, victa, victum, adj. [in, "not"; victus, "conquered"] *Unconquered, unconquished. Not to be conquered, invincible.*

invito, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To invite.*

in-vī-tus, ta, tum, adj. ["Not desiring"; hence] *Unwilling, reluctant, against one's will* [in, "not"; Sans. root vi, "to desire"].

ipse, psa, psum, pron. dem. [for is-ipse; fr. is; suffix pse] *Self, very, identical.* As Subst. m.: Sing.: *Himself.* Plur.: *Themselves.*

irā-cundus, cunda, cundum, adj. [ira-scor, "to be angry"] *Very angry or wrathful; full of rage or passion.*

is, ēa, id. pron. dem. [pronominal root 1] *This, that, person or thing just mentioned. As Subst. : a. Sing. Masc. : He, just mentioned ; they. Neut. : Those things. Of such a nature or kind, such.*

īta, adv. : *Thus, in this way or manner, so. In the following way or manner. Accordingly.*

itā-que, conj. [ita, "thus"; que, "and"] *And thus, and so. On this, or that, account ; therefore.*

ītem, adv. : *So, even, in like manner. Also, likewise.*

ī-ter, tinēris, n. [éo, "to go," through root 1] *Of troops : A march. A journey. A road, way.*

īter-um, adv. ("Beyond this further"; hence) *Anew, afresh, a second time, again.*

J.

jac-to, tāvi, tātum, tāre, 1. v. a. freq. jacio, "to throw"] *Of the arms : To throw or toss about. Of matters : To agitate, discuss.*

jam, adv. [prob. for eam, fr. is, "this"] *At this time ; now. Already.*

jūbéo, jussi, jussum, jūbere, 2. v. a. *To order, command, bid.*

jūdic-ium, ii, n. [jūdic-o, "to judge"] *A trial. Decree, decision. Judgment, opinion.*

jū-dic-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. and n. [for jur-dic-o ; fr. jus, jūr-is, "law"; dic-o "to point out"] *Act. : To decide, determine. To deem, consider, judge. Neut. : To settle, come to a decision or determination.*

jūg-um, i. n. [jungo, "to join," root jūg] *Of mountains : A height, summit, ridge. A yoke formed by a spear fastened horizontally to the top of two other spears set up in the ground, beneath which a vanquished force was compelled to pass as a token of submission.*

jū-mentum, menti, n. [for jug-mentum ; fr. jungo, "to yoke" root jūg] *A draught-animal ; beast of burden.*

jungo, junxi, junctum, jungēre, 3. v. a. *To join, unite* [akin to Gr. *ζυν*, root of *σύννυμι*].

jū-ro, rāvi, rātum, rāre, 1. v. n. *To take an oath, to swear. [root jūr, "to join" or "bind."]*

jū-s, ris, n. ("That which binds" morally ; hence) *Law, whether natural, human, or divine. A right or privilege. Power, authority.*

jus-jūra-ndum, Gen. jurisjura-ndi. n. [jus, "a right"; jur(a)-o, "to swear"] *An oath.*

jūstītia, itiae f. [just-us, "just"] ("The quality of the *justus* ; hence *Justice*).

jus-tus, ta, tum, adj. [for jur-tus ; fr. jus, jur-is, "law"] ("Provided with *jus* ; hence) *Just. Proper, right.*

jūvo, jūvi, jūtum, jūvare, 1. v. a. *To help, aid, assist.*

K.

Kāl-endae, endārum, f. plur. The proclamation was always made by the Pontifices, on the *first* day of the month ; hence called *The Kalends* [kāl-o = *καλώ*, "to call out"].

L.

lā-bor, ōris, m. *Toil, exertion, labour* [akin to Sans, root LABA] whence also λαβ, root of λα(μ)βάω, "to take"), "to obtain or get"].

lā-bōr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. and a. [labor, "labour"] *Neut. : To labour, toil. Of soldiers, etc. : To be hard pressed ; to be in difficulty or danger. Act. : To labour at ; to endeavour earnestly to effect or accomplish.*

lāc-esso, essivi oressii or essi, essitum, essēre, 3. v. a. intens. *To attack, fall upon, assault, assail* [akin to δάκνω, "to bite"].

lācrīma, ae (old form *dacrima*), f. *A tear* (see *lacesso*).

lācus, ūs, m. *A lake.*

lā-pis, pidis, m. *A stone.*

larg-ior, itus sum, iri, 4. v. dep. [larg-us, "large" ; hence, "bountiful"] *To bribe.*

larg-iter, adv. [larg-us, "large" ; hence, "extensive"] *Extensively, to a great extent, very much or greatly.*

largi-tio, tiōnis, f. [largi-or, "to bestow freely"] *In a good sense : Liberality.*

lāt-e, adv. [lāt-us, "wide"] *Widely, extensively, far and wide.*

lāt-ītūdo, itūdinis, f. [lāt us, "wide"] *Width, breadth.*

lātus, a, um, adj. *Broad wide.*

lātus, ēris, n. [prob. akin to lātus, "wide"] *A side of an army : The flank : latere aperto, on (their) open flank i. e. on their right flank, which was more exposed to the weapons of the enemy, in consequence of its not being protected by the shields of the soldiers.*

laus, laudis, f. *Praise, commendation* [=claus : from c v, "to hear"].

lēgā-tio, tiōnis, f. [lēg(a)-o, "to send on an embassy"] *An embassy. The persons attached to an embassy ; delegates.*

lēgā-tus, ti, m. [id.] *An ambassador. A lieutenant-general; a lieutenant.*

lēg-īo, īōnis, f. [lēg-o, "to levy or enlist"] *A Roman legion, consisting of 10 cohorts of infantry, and a squadron of 300 cavalry.*

lēgiōn-ārius, āria, ārium, adj. [lēg-īo, lēgiōn-is, "a legion"] *Of or belonging to, a legion; legionary.*

lēn ītas, itātis, f. [lēn-is, "soft, smooth"; hence, "gentle"] *Gentleness.*

lex, lēgis, f. [=leg-s; fr. leg-o, "to read"] *A law, statute, decree, ordinance.*

libēn-ter, adv. [forlibenter; fr. libens, libent-is, "willing"] *Willingly.*

libēr, ēra, ērum, adj. ("Doing as one desires") *Free, unrestricted, whether of persons or things [akin to root LUB, "to desire"; whence, also, Gr. ἐλευθερός, "free"]*.

libērāl-itas, itātis, f. libērālis, "liberal"] *Generosity, liberality.*

libēr-e, adv. [1. liber] *Freely, i. e. unrestrictedly, without restraint.*

lib-ēri, ērōrum, m. plur. (the sing. only in late Lat.) *Children [akin to root LUB, "to desire or love"]*.

libēr-tas, tātis, f. [libēr, "free"] *Freedom, liberty*

līc-ēo, ōi, itum, ēre (usually only in 3rd pers. sing. and inf. mood), 2. v. n. *To be allowable; to be permitted or lawful.*

liceor, itus, sum. ēri, 2. v. dep. *To bid at an auction.*

ling-ua, uae, f. [ling-o, "to lick"] *The tongue. A language.*

lin-ter, tris m. [perhaps lin-o, "to smear"] *A boat, skiff.*

lītera, ae. f. Sing.: *A letter of the alphabet. Plur.: A letter, epistle.*

lōc-us, i, m. (Plur. lōc-i, m., and lōc-a, n.) *A place [prob. akin to Gr. root lex, "to put"]*

long-e, adv. [long-us, "long"; hence, "far off"] *Pos.: Far off at a distance. With Comparative and Superlative words: By far, very much, greatly. Comp: To a greater distance than usual. Sup.: Furthest.*

long-inqu-us, (trisyll), a um, adj. [for long-hinc-vus; fr. long-us, "long"; hinc, "hence"] *Of time: Of long duration or continuance; long continued, long.*

long-itūdo, itūdinis, f. [long-us, "long"] *Length.*

long-us, a, um, adj.: *Long. Of time: Distant, far off, remote.*

lōqu-or, ūtus, (and lōc-) sum, i, 3. v. dep. *To speak, talk [akin to Sans. root Lā, "to speak"]*.

lū-na, nae, f. [for luc-na; fr. lūc-ēo, "to shine"] *The moon.*

lux, lūcis, f. [for luc-s; fr. lūc-ēo, "to shine"] *The light of day, daylight*

M.

māg-is, comp. adv. [MAG, root of magn-us] *More; in a greater or higher degree.*

† **māgistr-ātus**, ātūs, (Dat. magistratū, ch. 16), m. [magister, magistris- "master"] *Magisterial office, magistracy. A magistrate.*

magn-itūdo, itūdinis, f. [magn-us] *Greatness, magnitude, life size.*

magn-ōpēre, adv. [for magnō-pere, the ablatives sing. of magnūs, "great," and ōpūs, ōpēris, "work," respectively] ("With great toil," etc.; hence) *Greatly, very greatly, exceedingly.*

magn-us, na, num, adj.: *Great, large. Of sound, etc.: Powerful, loud. In age: Great, advanced old akin to Gr. μέγας; Sans. mah-a, "great"; fr. Sans. root MAH, originally MAGH, "to be great, powerful"]*

māl-e, adv. [māl-us, "bad"] *Badly; injuriously, hurtfully, to one's hurt.*

mālē-fic-ium, ii, n. [formale-fac-ium; fr. mālē, "badly"; faciō, "to do"] *An evil deed, wickedness, offence, crime, bad action. Mischief, hurt, harm.*

māl-us, a, um, adj. *Bad of its kind. (Irreg.) Comp.: pejor; (Sup.: pessimus) [akin to Sans. mal-as, "dirty"; Gr. μέλας, "black"]*.

māndā-tum, ti, n. [mand(a)-o. *A command, order etc.*

mando, dāvi, dātum, dāre, 1. v. a. [mānus, "hand"; do, "to put"] *To enjoin, command. With personal pron. in reflexive force: To betake one's self to flight.*

mān-ēo, si, sum, ēre, 2. v. n. *To remain, continue [μείνω].*

mā-nus, nūs, f. ("The measuring thing"; hence) *A hand [akin to Sans. root MA, "to measure"]*.

mātāra, ae. f. *A Celtic, javelin or pike.*

māter, tris, f. ("The producer," or "she that brings forth"; hence) *A mother [akin to Gr. μήτηρ. Sans. mā-tri, fr. root MA, in the meaning of "to produce"]*.

mātr-imōnium, imōnii, n. [mater, matr-is "mother"] *Marriage, matrimony.*

mātūr-e, adv. [matur-us] *Early, speedily, soon: — quam maturime, as speedily as possible.*

mātūr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [maturus, "quick"] *To hasten, quicken, or accelerate.*

mātūrus, a, um, adj. *Ripe.*

maxīm-e, sup. adv. [maxim-us] *In the greatest or highest degree ; very greatly ; especially, chiefly.*

maximus, a, um, sup. adj. :—quam maximum numerum, *as large a number as possible.*

mēdiocr-iter, adv. [mediocr-is, “moderate”] *Moderately* :—non mediocriter, (not moderately, i.e.) *excessively, in a very high degree.*

mēd-ius, ia, ium, adj. *Middle, mid.* The middle of that denoted by the subst. with which it is in attribution [akin to Gr. μέσος].

mēmō-ria, iae, f. [mēmōr, “mindful”] *Memory, recollection, remembrance.*

men-s, tis, f. *The mind*, as being the origin of thought [akin to Sans. mōn-as, “mind” ; fr. root MAN, “to think”].

mensis, is, m. (“The measuring thing” ; hence) *A month*, as a measure of time [akin to Sans. mōsa, “a month” ; fr. root MA, “to measure”].

mercā-tor, tōris, m. [merc(a)-or, “to trade”] *A trader, merchant.*

mer-ce-s, dis, f. [for mer-ced-s ; fr. merx, merc-is, “gain” ; cēd-o, “to come”] *Reward, recompense. Terms, condition.*

mēr-ēor, itus sum, ēri, 2. v. dep. *To deserve or merit.* With Adv. : *To act or conduct one's, etc.*, in the way denoted by the accompanying adverb [akin to μερ or μορ, root of μείρομαι, to obtain by lot].

mēri-dies, diei, m. [for mēdi-dies ; fr. mēdi-us, “middle” ; dies, “day”] *Mid-day, noon.*

mēr-ītum, iti, n. [mēr-ēor, “to deserve”] *Desert, merit.*

mētior, mensus sum, mētiri, 4. v. dep. *To measure, measure out* for division, etc. [root MET or MEN, akin to Sans. root MA, “to measure”].

mīles, itis, comm. gen. *A soldier.*

milit-āris, āre, adj. [mīles, milit-is, “a soldier”] *Military, pertaining to war* :—res militaris, *military affairs*, i.e. *military science*, etc.

mill-e, num. adj. indecl. *A thousand* :—mille passūs, *a thousand paces*, i.e. *a (Roman) mile*, estimated at 1,618 English yards, or 142 yards less than an English mile. As Subst. : **millia**, ium, n. plur. : *A thousand* :—with fol. gen. : hominum, ch. 4 ; with passuum (=mille passūs), ch. 2, etc. : *A mile* [akin to χίλ-ος].

mīnīm-e, sup. adv. [mīnīm-us] *In the least degree, by no means.*

mīnīm-um, sup. adv. [adverbial neut. of mīnīm-us] *Very little, very slightly, not at all* :—minimum posse, *to have very little power or influence.*

mīn-ūo, ūi, ūtum, ūere, 3. v. n. *To grow, or become less ; to diminish* [root MIX, akin to minor, and μιν-ύω].

mīror, rātus, sum, rāri, 1. v. dep. *To wonder or marvel.* *To wonder or marvel, at* [akin to root SM, to “smile”].

mīr-us, a, um, adj. [mīr-or, “to wonder”] *Wonderful, amazing, marvellous.*

miser, ēra, ērum, adj. *Wretched, miserable.*

mīser-or, ātus, sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [miser, “wretched”] *To lament, deplore, bewail.*

mitto, mīsi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. : *To let, suffer, or allow to go. To cause to go ; to send.*

mōdo, adv. *Only, merely.*

mō-dus, di, m. *A manner, method, way, mode* [akin to root MA, “to measure” ; whence also μέτρον, “a measure”].

mōlo, ūi, itum, ēre, 3. v. a. *To grind, crush, bruise* corn [root, MAL, “to crush”].

mōn-ēo, ūi, itum, ēre, 2. v. a. *To warn, advise, admonish* [akin to root MAN ; see mens].

mons, tis, m. [for mīn-s ; fr. mīn-čo, “to project”] *A mountain, mount.*

mōr-ior, tāus sum, i or īri, 3. v. dep. *To die* [akin to root MOR, “to die”].

mōror, ātus, sum āri, 1. v. dep. *To delay, i.e. to tarry, linger, stay.*

mor-s, tis, f. [mōr-or, “to die”]. *Death.*

mos, ōris, m. [prob. for meos ; fr. mō-o, “to go”] *Practise, usage, custom.*

mōvēo, mōvi, mōtum, mōvēre, 2. v. a. *To move, set in motion.*

mūlier, ēris, f. *A woman.*

mult-ītūdo, itūdinis, f. [mult-us] *A great number, a multitude.*

mult-um, adv. [adverbial acc. neut. of mult-us] *Much, greatly.*

mul-tus, ta, tum, adj. Sing. : *Much. Many a ; i.e. many, numerous.* Plur. : *Many, numerous.*

mūn-īo, (old form moen-io, Ivi or Ii, itum, ire, 4. v. a. [moen-ia, “walls”]) *To build a wall, or raise fortifications, around ; to fortify. To defend, protect, secure, guard.*

mūnī-tio, tiōnis, f. [mūnī-o, “to fortify”] *A fortifying, the act of raising fortifications. A fortification, rampart.*

mūnus, ēris, n. *A gift, present.*

mūr-us, i, m. *A wall of a city* [akin to root *mun*, "to defend"; cp. *ἀμύνειν*].

N.

nam, conj. *For*.

nam-que, conj. [nam, "for"; suffix *que*] An emphatic confirmative particle: *For, for indeed, for truly*.

na(n)c-iscor, nactus sum, nancisci, 3. v. dep. *To get, obtain. To meet with, find* [akin to root *nac*, "to attain"].

nā-tiō, tiōnis, f. [na-scor, "to be born"] *A nation, race of people*.

nā-tūra, turæ, f. [id.] ("A being born"; hence "birth"; hence) *The nature, i.e. the natural property, etc., of a thing; natural situation or position of a country, etc.*

nāvis, is, f. *A ship, vessel* [akin to Gr. *ναῦς*; root *na*, "to swim"].

nē, adv. *end* conj. Adv.: *No, not*:—ne quidem, *not even*. Conj.: *That, not, lest*. After words denoting fear: *That*. After words denoting a hindrance, etc.: *That one, etc., should not, etc., do; from doing*.

nē, enclitic and interrogative particle: *Whether*:—ne . . . an . . . an, *whether . . . or whether . . . or whether*.

nec; see neque.

necessāri-o, a d v. *Unavoidably, necessarily*.

necessāri-us, āria, ārium, adj. [nē-cesse, "needful"] *Needful, necessary Pressing, urgent. Nearly related to one through natural ties*. As Subst.: *necessarius*, ii, m. *A relative, kinsman*.

necess-ītūdo, itūdinis, f. [id.] *Relationship. Friendship, intimacy*.

nec-ne, conj. [nec, "not"; ne, "or"] *Or not, in independent questions; corresponding to annon in direct*.

nēc-o, āvi or ūi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To kill* [akin to root *nec*, "to perish"].

neg-līgo, lexi, lectum, ligēre, 3. v. a. [for nec-lego; fr. nec, "not"; lego, "to gather"] *To neglect*.

nē-g-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To deny* [akin to Sans. root *an* (h=gh), "to say"; with Lat. *ne*, "no," prefixed].

nēg-ōtium, ōtīi, n. [for nec-ōtium; fr. nec, "not"; ōtium, "leisure"] *An affair, matter, business*.

nē-mo, mīnis, comm. gen. [contr. fr. ne-homo; fr. nē, "not"; homo, "a person"] *No person, no one, nobody*.

nē-que, (contracted *nec*), conj. [nē, "not"; que, "and"] *And not, nor*:—neque (nec) . . . neque (nec), *neither . . . nor*.

nē-quiquam, adv. [ne, "not"; quiquam, adverbial abl. of quisquam, "any"] *In vain, to no purpose, fruitlessly*.

nery-us, i, m. Plur.: *Might, power* [Gr. *νεῦρ-ος*].

neu; see nēve.

nē-ve, (contracted *neu*), conj. *And not, nor* [nē, "not"; ve, "and"].

nex, nēcīs, f. [for nec-s, fr. nēc-o, "to kill"] *Death; esp. violent death*.

nīhil; see nihilum.

nī-hīlum, i (apocopated *nīhil*, contr. *nīl*, indecl.), n. [for nē-hīlum; fr. nē, "not"; hīlum (= filum), "a thread"] *Nothing*.

nīhīlo; see nihilum.

nīl; see nihilum.

nī-sī, conj. [ne, "not"; sī, "if"] *If not; i.e. unless, except*.

nītor, nīsus, or nīxus sum, nīti, 3. v. dep. With Abl.: *To rely, or depend, upon*.

nō-bilis, bile, adj. [nō-sco] *Renowned, celebrated, famed. Of noble birth, high-born*. As Subst.: *nō-bilis*, i, m. *A nobleman, noble*.

nōbīl-itas, itātis, f. [nōbīl-is, "noble"] *The nobility, the nobles*.

noctu, [abl. of obsolete noctus=nox] *By night; in the course of the night*.

noct-urnus, urna, urnum, adj. [nox, noct-is, "night"] *Of or belonging to night; by night, nocturnal*.

n-ōlo, ōlūi, olle, v. irreg. contracted fr. ne. volo; nē, "not"; vōlo, "to wish"] *To not wish, to be unwilling*.

nō-men, mīnis, n. [no-sco] *A name. Purpose, design*: suo nomine, *on his own account*.

nōmīnā-tim, adv. [nōmīn a)o, "to name"] *By name, expressly*.

non, adv. *Not*.

non-ā-gīnta, num. adj. indecl. ("Ninth ten"; i. e.) *Ninety* [nōn-us, "ninth"; (a)connecting vowel; gīnta=kόντα="ten"].

non-dum, adv. [non, "not"; dum, "yet"] *Not yet*.

non-nullus, nulla, nullum, adj. [non, "not"; nullus, "none"; see non] *Some*.

non-nunquam, adv. [non, "not"; nunquam, "never"; see non] *Sometimes*.

nos-ter, tra, trum, pron. poss. nos] *Our, our own, ours*.—As Subst.: *nostri*, ōrum, m. plur. *Our men*.

nōvem, num, adj. indecl. *nine* [akin to Sans. *naren*].

nōvus, a, um, adj.: *New*: novae res, *a change in the state, a revolution*. Sup.:

Last. As Subst.: **novissīmi**, ōrum, m. plur. ("The last"; hence) Of soldiers: *Those in the rear of an army, the rear.* *Where a thing is last, the last part of a thing:* *novissimum agmen, the last part of an army on march, the rear.* [akin to Gr. *véos*]

nox, noctis, f. *Night.* [akin to *vúg*.]

nūbo, nupsī, (and) nupta, sum, nuptum, nūbēre, 3. v. a. and n. [nūb.es, "a cloud"] *To marry or wed; to be married.*

nūd-us, a, um, adj. *Naked, bare.*

n-ullus, ulla, ullum, adj. [for *ne-ullus*; fr. *nē*, "not"; *ullus*, "any"] *Not any, none, no.*

num, interrog. particle: In direct questions; without any corresponding force in English. In indirect questions: *Whether.*

nūmē-rus, ēri, m. *A number* [akin to *vém-ω*, "to distribute"].

nun-c, adv. *Now* [akin to Gr. *nūn*], "now"; c. shortened fr. *ce*, demonstrative suffix"].

n-unquam, adv. [for *neunquam*; fr. *ne*, "not"; *unquam*, "ever"] *Not ever, never.*

nū-per, adv. [for *nov-per*; fr. *nov-us*, "new"] *Newly, lately, recently, not long ago.*

nuntī-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [nunti-us] *To carry or bring intelligence about; to announce.*

nuntī-us, i, m. [perhaps contracted fr. *nov-ven-tūs*; fr. *nōv-us*, "new"; *vēn-io*, "to come"] *A bearer of news or tidings; a messenger, courier, etc. News or tidings; a message.*

nū-t-us, tūs, m. [nū-o, "to nod"] *Command, will.*

O.

ōb, prep. gov. acc.: To indicate, object or cause: *On account of, for* [akin to *ἐπί*].

ōbaer-ātus, āta, ātum, adj. [ōb, "upon"; *aes*, *aer-is*, "bronze": hence, "money"] *Involved in debt.* Subst.: **ōbaerātus**, i, m. *A debtor.*

objīcī-o, jēcī, jectum, jicēra, 3. v. a. [for *ob-jācī-o*; fr. *oh*, "before"; *jācī-o*, "to throw"] *To oppose. To expose.*

ob-liviscor, tus sum, visci, 3. v. dep. With Gen.: *To forget.* [prob. *ob*, "without force"; root *li* or *liv*, "to melt"].

obsēcr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for *ob-sacr-o*; *ōb*, "on account of"; *sacr-a*, "sacrifices"] *To beg, entreat, implore, beseech.*

ob-servo, servāvi, servātum, servāre, 1. v. [ōb, "without force"; *servo*, "to watch." *To watch, observe, mark.*

obses, *idis*, m. and f. [for *obsid-*; fr. *obsid-ē-o*, "to stay or remain," anywhere] *A hostage.*

ob-signo, signāvi, signātum, signāre, 1. v. a. [ōb, "without force"; *signo*, "to seal"] *To seal, put a seal upon, a will.*

ob-stringo, strinxī, strictum, stringēre, 3. v. a. [ōb, "around"; *stringo*, "to bind"] *Morally: To bind, attach, connect.*

ob-tīnē-o, tīnāi, tentum, tinēre, 2. v. a. [for *ob-tēnē-o*; *ōb*, "without force"; *tēnē-o*, "to hold"] *To hold or occupy, To acquire, get possession of, obtain.*

occā-sus, sūs, m. [for *occadus*; fr. *occid-o*, "to set," through true root *oc-cad*] (Of the sun," etc.: *The setting or going down.*

oc-cido, cīdi, cīsm, cidēre, 3. v. a. [for *ob-caedo*; fr. *ōb*, "against"; *caedo*, "to strike," etc.] *To cut down, kill, slay, slaughter.*

occul-t, tāvi, tātum, tāre, 1. v. a. intens. [occūlo, "to hide"] *To hide, conceal.*

occul-tus, ta, tum, adj. [id.] *Hidden, concealed, secret.* Adverbial expression; In occulto, *Secretly, in secret.*

oc-cūp-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. [for *ob-cap-o*; fr. *ob*, "without force"; *cap*, root of *cāp-io*, "to take"] *To take or lay hold of, to seize. To occupy, hold possession of.*

oc-curro, curri, (rarely *cū-curri*), cursum, currēre, 3. v. n. [for *ob-curro*; fr. *ōb*, "up or upwards"; *curro*, "to run"] With Dat.: *To hinder, oppose, prevent.*

ōcēānus, i, m. *The ocean* [Ὠκεανός].

octo, num, adj. indecl. *Eight* [ὀκτώ].

octō-dēcim, num, adj. indecl. [for *octo-decem*; fr. *octo*, "eight"; *decem*, "ten"] *Eighteen.*

octō-ginta, num, adj. indecl. ["Eight-tens"] *Eighty* [octo, "eight"; *ginto* = *κοῖντα* = "ten"].

ōc-ūlus, ūli, m. *An eye* [akin to Gr. *ὄκος*].

ōdi, isse, v. defect. *To hate.*

of-fendo, fendi, fensum, fendēre, 3. v. a. *To mortify, vex, annoy, offend the feelings* [for *ob-fendo*; fr. *ōb*, "against"; *obsol. fendo*, "to strike"].

offen-sio, siōnis, f. [for *offend-sio*; fr. *offend-o*, "to offend"] *A giving offence to; an offending, or displeasing, of.*

of-fīc-ium, ii, n. [for *op-fāc-ium*; fr. (*ops*) *ōp-is*, "aid"; *fācī-o*, "to perform"] *A service incumbent on one; an obligation, duty, office. An official duty office.*

omn-ino, adv. [omn-is, "all"] *Altogether, wholly. In all.*

omnis, e, adj. Sing. Of a class : *Every, all. The whole of; all.* Plur. : *All.* As Subst. : **omnes**, ium, comm. gen. plur. *All persons, all, omnia*, um, n. plur. *All things, every thing.*

opes, um; see ops.

oportet, ūt, ēre (only in 3rd person and Inf. mood), 2. v. n. (*It*) *is necessary, fit, proper, right; (it) behoves.*

oppidum, i, n. *A town.*

op-port-ūnus, ūna, ūnum, adj. [for ob-port-ūnus; fr. ōb, "over against"; port-us, "a harbour"] *Convenient, suitable, seasonable, opportune.*

op-prīmo, pressi, pressum, primēre, 3. v. a. [for ob-prēmo; fr. ōb, "against"; prēmo, "to press"] *To crush, overwhelm, overpower.*

op-pugno, pugnāvi, pugnātum, pugnāre, 1 v. a. [for ob-pugno; fr. ōb, "against"; pugno, "to fight"] *To attack, lay siege to, besiege, a city, etc.*

op-s is (Nom. Sing. does not occur, and the Dat. Sing. is found perhaps only once), f. [probably for ap-s, fr. root ap, whence ap-iscor, "to obtain"] *Means of any kind; wealth, riches, resources.*

optimus, a, um, sup. adj. *Best; very good or favourable.*

opus, ēris, n. : *Work, labour. A milita-y work, fortification.*

opus (only in Nom. and Ace.), n. indecl. *Need, necessity.* In connection with some part of sum used as an Adj. : *Needful, necessary.*

orā-tio, tiōnis, f. or(a)-o, "to speak"] *A speech, oration.*

ord-o, ūnis, m. [ord-iōr, "to weave"] *Arrangement, order. A line, rank, of soldiers.*

ōriēns, ntis, P. pres. of ōrīor; in orientem solem, *towards the rising sun, i.e. the East.*

ōr-iōr, tus sum, īri, 3, and 4. v. dep. Of the heavenly bodies : *To rise, become visible. To begin, commence* [prob. akin to ὀρ-νυμι, "to stir up"].

ornā-mentum, menti, n. [orn(a)-o, "to adorn"] *Ornament, decoration.*

ōr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [os, ōr-is, "the mouth"] *To pray, beg, entreat, beseech.*

os-tendo, tendi, tensum, tendēre, 3. v. a. [for obs-tendo; fr. obs (=ōb), "before or over against"; tendo, "to stretch out"] *To show, exhibit, display. To declare, set forth, make known.*

P.

pābūlā-tio, tiōnis, f. [pabul(a)-or, "to forage"] *A foraging, collecting of fodder.*

pā-būlum, būli, n. [pa-sco, "to feed"] Of animals : *Food, fodder.*

pācātus, a, um, P. perf. pass. of pāco. Pa. : *Undisturbed, tranquil, in a state of peace.*

pāc-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [pax, pāc-is, "peace"] *To bring into a state of peace or quietness; to tranquilize.*

paene, adv. *Nearly, almost.*

pāgus, i, m. *A canton; i.e. A district of the Gauls or Germans. The people of a canton.*

pālam, adv. *Openly.*

pāl-us, ūlis, f. *A swamp, marsh* [hybrid word; for pal-ud-s; fr. πηγ-ός, "clay"; ūdus, "wet, moist"].

pando, pandi, pansum and passum, pandēre, 3. v. a. *To open, throw open.* P. perf. pass. : Of the hair : *Dishevelled.*

par, paris, adj. *Equal; sometimes with Dat.*

pārātus, a, um, P. perf. pass. of pārō. *Ready, prepared.*

pār-ēo, ūi, itum, ēre, 2. v. n. *To obey.*

pār-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To make, or get ready; to prepare.*

par-s, tis, f. *A part, piece, portion, share. A quarter, side, direction.*

par-vus, va, vum, adj. *Small, little.*

pas-sus, sūs, m. [for pad-sus; fr. PAD, root of pando, "to spread out"] *A step or pace. As a measure of length: A pace equal to five Roman feet; see mille.*

pātens, ntis, P. pres. of pateo. *Open, lying open, to attack.*

pāt-ēo ūi, no sup., ēre, 2. v. n. *To lie, stand, or be, open. To stretch out, extend* [akin to Gr. πει-άπτωμι, "to extend"].

pā-ter, tris, m. *A father, as one who protects* [akin to Gr. πα-τήρ, fr. root PA, "to protect, to nourish"].

pātiōr, passus sum, pāti, 3. v. dep. *To bear, endure. To allow, permit, suffer* [akin to παθ, root of πάσχω].

paucus, a, um, adj. Sing. : *Small, whether in size or extent. Plur. : Few.* As Subst. : **pauci**, ōrum, m. plur. *Few persons, few. pauca, ōrum, n. plur. *Few things.**

paul-ātim, adv. [pauc-us, "little"]. *By little and little; by degrees, gradually.*

paul-o, adv. [adverbial abl. of paul-us, "a little"] *By a little, a little, somewhat.*

paul-um, adv. [adverbial neut. of paul-us, "little"] *A little, somewhat.*

pāx, pācis, f. [for pac-s; fr. root PAC, or PAX, whence pāciscor, "to bind, to covenant"; pango, "to fasten"] *Peace*

pecco, avi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. *To do amiss, commit a fault, transgress, offend, do wrong.*

pēd-es, itis, m. [for pēd-i-t-s. fr. pes. pēd-is, "a foot"; (t) epenthetic; i, root of ēo, "to go"; *A foot-soldier.* Plur.: *Infantry.*

pējor, ns; see malus. As Subst. n. **pėjus**, *A worse thing.*

pello, pēpuli, pulsum, pellēre, 3. v. a. *To beat, rout, put to flight.*

pendo, pēpendi and pendi, pensum, pendēre, 3. v. a. [prob. akin to pend-eo, "to hang"] *To weigh, weigh out. To pay.*

pēr, prep. gov. acc.: *Through, through the midst of. All over or along. Through, by, by means of.*

percunctā-tio, tiōnis, f. [percunct (a)-or, "to enquire"] *An enquiring, enquiry.*

per-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcēre, 3. v. a. [per, "through"; dūco, "to lead"] *Of a ditch, building, etc.: To bring, carry, etc.*

pēr-ēo, ivi or ii, itum, ire, v. n. irreg. [pēr, "through"; ēo, "to go"] *To perish, lose one's life, die.*

per-fācilis, fācile, adj. [pēr, in "augmentative force; facilis, "easy"] *Very easy.*

per-fēro, tūli, lātum, ferre, v. a. irreg. [pēr, "without force"; fēro, "to bear"] *To bear, submit to, endure.*

per-fīcio, fēci, factum, fīcēre, 3. v. a. [for per-fācio; fr. per, "completely"; fācio, "to make"] *To accomplish, execute, carry out. To complete.*

per-fringo, frēgi, fractum, fringēre, 3. v. a. [for per-frango, "to break"] *To break through.*

per-fūg-a, ae, m. [per-fūg-īo, "to desert"] *deserter to the enemy.*

per-fūgio, fūgi, fūgitum, fūgēre, 3. v. a. [pēr, "quite"; fūgio, "to flee"] *To flee for refuge. To go over, or desert, to the enemy.*

pēricul-ōsus, ōsa, ōsum, adj. [periculum, "danger"] *Full of danger, dangerous, perilous.*

pēri-cūlum, enli, n. [obsol. pēri-or, "to try"] *A trial, experiment, attempt: with Objective Gen.: periculum facere (alicujus), to make trial of one, to try one, put one to the test. Danger, peril.*

pēri-tus, ta, tum, adj. [obsol. pēri-or, "to try"] With Gen.: *Acquainted with, skilled in.*

per-mānēo, mansi, mansum, mānēre, 2. v. n. [pēr, "to the end"; mānēo, "to stay"] *To stay to the end; to continue, endure, remain.*

per-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [pēr, "through"; mitto, "to let go"] *To give leave, or permission, to; to permit or allow.*

per-mōvēo, mōvi, mōtum, mōvēre, 2. v. a. [pēr, "thoroughly"; mōvēo, "to move"] *To influence, affect, move deeply. To induce, persuade, prevail upon.*

pernīc-ies, iēi, f. [for pernēc-ies; fr. pernēc-o, "to kill utterly"] *Extermination, ruin.*

per-paucus, pauca, paucum, adj. pēr, "very"; paucus, "little"] *Very little. Plur.: Very few.*

perpētū-o, adv. [perpētū-us, "constant"] *Constantly, uninterruptedly, perpetually.*

per-pēt-ūs, ūa, ūum, adj. *Constant, perpetual. Whole, entire* [pēr, "through"; root PET, akin to περ-ἀννται, "to extend"; and to pāt-ēo, "to lie open"]

per-rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, rumpēre, 3. v. a. [per, "through"; rumpo, "to break"] *To break, or burst, through.*

per-sēquor, sēqūutus sum, sēqui, 3. v. dep. [per, in "augmentative" force; sēquor, "to follow"] *To follow perseveringly, to continue to follow.*

persēvēr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. [persēvēr-us, "very strict"] *To persist, persevere.*

per-solvo, solvi, sōlūtum, solvēre, 3. v. a. [pēr, "thoroughly"; solvo, "to pay"] *Of punishment: to pay; see poena.*

per-spicio, spexi, spectrum, spīcēre, 3. v. a. [for per-spēcio; fr. per, "thoroughly"; spēcio, "to see"] *To ascertain, learn.*

per-suādēo, suāsi suāsum, suādēre, 2. v. a. [per, "thoroughly"; suadeo, "to advise"] *To convince, persuade, induce. With Dat. of person and Acc. of neut. pron.: To convince, or persuade, a person of or about a thing.*

per-terrēo, terrūi, terrītum, terrēre, 2. v. a. [pēr, "thoroughly"; terrēo, "to frighten"] *To frighten thoroughly; to strike with terror, terrify greatly.*

pertināc-ia, iae, f. [pertinax pertināc-is, "obstinate"] *Obstinacy, pertinacity.*

per-tīnēo, tīnūi, tentum, tīnēre, 2. v. n. [for por-tēncō; fr. pēr, "thoroughly"; tēncō, "to hold." *To reach, or extend, to a place. To belong, relate or have reference to.*

per-turbo, turbāvi, turbātum, turbāre, 1. v. a. [pēr, "utterly"; turbo, "to disturb"] *To disturb utterly, to throw into great confusion. To discompose, embarrass.*

per-vēnio, vēni, ventum, vēnire, 4. v. n. [pēr, "quite"; vēnio, "to come"] *To reach or arrive; to come up.*

pes, pēd-is, m. ("The going thing"; hence) *A foot*, whether of persons, etc., or as a measure: *pedem referre, (to carry back the foot, i. e.) to retire, retreat* [akin to πούς, ποδ-ός; and to root PAD, "to go"].

pēt-o, ivi and ii, itum, ēre, 3. v. a. *To seek*, i. e. *to ask, beg, solicit, entreat* [akin to root PAT, "to fly"].

phālanx, ngis, f, *A phalanx* [φάλαγξ].

pi-lum, li, n. *A heavy javelin* used by the Roman infantry.

plāc-ēo, ūi, itum, ēre 2. v. n.: *To be pleasing or agreeable; to please*. Impers.: *With Dat. It pleases, or seems good to.*

plān-īties, itīei, f. [plān-us, "flat"] *A flat or even surface; a plain.*

plēb-s, is, f. *The multitude or mass; the populace* [akin to Gr. πληθ-ος, "a multitude"].

plērūmque, adv. [adverbial neut. of plērūque, "the greater part of"] *For the most part, generally.*

plūrim-um, sup. adv. adverbial neut. of plurim-us. *Most.*

plū-rīmus, rima, rimum, sup. adj. [PLE, root of plē-o, "to fill"; (i) connecting vowel; sinus, superl. suffix: = ple-i-sinus; changed as follows: plei-sinus, pli-sinus, ploi-sinus, ploi-rāmus, plū-rīmus] Sing.: *Very much.* Plur.: *Very many, most numerous.*

plūs, plūris (Plur. plures, plūra), comp. adj. [contr. and changed fr. ple-or; PLE, root of plē-o, "to fill"] comparative suffix "or"] *More.*

plus, comp. adv. [adverbial neut. of I. plus] *More.*

poena, ae, f. *Compensation, expiation, satisfaction*:—poenas dāre, pendēre, persolvēre *to give, or pay, satisfaction*, i. e. *to undergo punishment, pay the penalty, etc.*;—poenas reptere, *(to reseek satisfaction, i. e.) to inflict punishment* [root PU, "to purify"].

pol-licēor, licētus sum, licēri, 2. v. dep. [for pot-lic-ēor; fr. inseparable prefix pōt, "much"; licēor, "to bid" at an auction] *To hold forth, or promise, a thing.*

pōno, pōnūi, pōsitum, pōnēre. 3. v. a. [usually regarded as contracted fr. posīno (i. e. po, inseparable prefix with augmentative force; sino, "to let down"), "to let down quite"; but rather fr. a root POS] *To put, place, or set. Of a camp: To pitch. To appoint, assign.*

pon-s, tis, m. *A bridge* [akin to root PAD, "to go"].

pōpūlā-tio, tionis, f. [popul(a)-or, "to lay waste"] *A laying waste, a ravaging, ravage.*

pōpūl-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [pōpūl-us, "a people"] *To lay waste, ravage, devastate.*

pō-pūl-us, i, m. ("The many"; hence) *The people* [probably for pol-pol-us; fr. πολ-ύς "many"], reduplicated].

por-to, tāvi, tātum, tāre, 1. v. a. *To carry, convey* [prob. akin to φέρ-ω].

portor-ium, ii, n. [obsol. portor = portitor, "a carrier"] *A toll, or impost, paid on goods carried through a country.*

posco, pōposci, no sup., poseēre, 3. v. a. *To require, demand.*

posses-sio, sionis, f. [for possessed-sio; fr. possidēo, to "possess," through root POSSED] *A possession, occupation.*

pos-sidēo, sēdi, sessum, sidēre, 2. v. a. [for pot-sēdēo; fr. pōt inseparable prefix, "much"; sēdēo, "to sit"] *To have and hold; to be master of; to own or possess. To take, or hold, possession of.*

possum, pōtūi, no sup., posse, v. n. irreg. [for pot-sum; fr. pōtis, "able"; sum, "to be"] *To be able, or powerful; to have power to do.*

post, adv. and prep. [perhaps contracted from pōne ("behind") est, "it is"] Adv.: *Of time: Afterwards, after, later, etc.* Prep. gov. Acc.: *Of place: After, behind.* Of time: *After, subsequent to.*

post-ēa, adv. [probably for post-eam; i. e. post, "after"; ēam, acc. sing. fem. of is, "this", "that"] *After this or that; afterwards.* In combination with quam, or as one word: *After that.*

postēa-quam; see postea.

post-ērus, ēra, ērum, adj. [post] *Coming after, following, next.*

post-quam, also written as two words, post quam, conj. [post, "after"; quam, "that"] *After that, when, as soon as.*

postr-i-die, adv. [contr. fr. postēr-i-die; i. e. postēr-o die; the respective ablatives of postēr-us, "following"; dies, "day"; with (i) connecting vowel] *On the day after, on the following day, on the morrow.* The adverbs postridie, pridie, tum, tunc, are sometimes followed by a Gen.: postridie and pridie are also followed by an acc., usually that of the name of the Roman divisions of a month, or of festivals.

post ūl āt um, ti, n. [postul(a)-o] Mostly plur.: *A thing demanded; a demand.*

postūlo, āvi, ātum, āre. 1. v. a. [usually considered akin to posco] *To ask, demand, request, require, desire.*

pōtens, ntis, (part. pres. of *possum*; but found only as) adj. *Mighty, powerful, strong, potent, etc.*

pōtent-ātus, ātus, m. [pōtens, pōtent-is, "powerful"] *Political power, dominion, rule, command.*

pōtent-ia, iae, f. [i.d.] *Might, force, power. Authority, sway, influence.*

pōtes-tas, tātis, f. [for pōtent-tas; fr. pōtens, pōtent-is, "powerful"] *Power. A possibility, opportunity.*

pōt-ior, itus, sum, iri, 4. v. dep. [pōtis, "powerful"] *To become master of; to obtain, get possession of.*

pōtī-us, comp. adv. [adverbial, neuter of *poti-or*, "preferable"] *Preferably, rather, more:—potius quam, rather than.*

prae, prep. gov. abl. [akin to *pro*, "before"] *In comparison of, compared with.*

prae-cāvēō, cāvi, cautum, cāvēre, 2. v. n. [prae, "before," "beforehand"; cāvēō, "to take heed"] *To take heed beforehand; to beware, be on one's guard.*

praecēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdere, 3. v. a. [prae, "before"; cēdo, "to go"] ("To go before, or precede," a person; hence) *To surpass, excel.*

prae-cipio, cēpi, ceptum, cipere, 3. v. a. and n. [for prae-cāpio; fr. prae, "beforehand"; cāpio, "to take"] *To enjoin, direct, bid, command.*

praecipū-e, adv. [praecipuus, "especially"] *Especially.*

prae-dico, dicāvi, dicātum, dicāre, 1. v. a. [prae, "publicly"; dico, "to proclaim"] *To proclaim publicly; to declare, publish, announce.*

praefec-tus, ti, m. [for praefac-tus; fr. prae-ficio, "to set before," through root *FAC.*] *A prefect, commander.*

prae-ficio, fēci, factum, ficere, 3. v. a. [for prae-fācio, fr. prae, "before"; fācio, "to make"] *To set, or place, over; to appoint to the command of.*

prae-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittere, 3. v. a. [prae, "before"; mitto, "to send"] *To send before or forwards; to send in advance.*

prae-m-ium, ii, n. [for prae-ēm-ium; fr. prae, "before"; ēm-o, "to take"] *Reward, recompense.*

prae-opto, optāvi, optātum, optāre, 1. v. a. [prae, "beyond or more than"; opto, "to wish"] *To wish for, or choose, the rather; to prefer.*

prae-pōno, pōsni, pōsitum, pōnere, 3. v. a. [prae, "before"; pōno, "to put"] *To set over as commander.*

prae-scribo, scripsi, scriptum, scribere, 3. v. a. [prae, "before"; scribo, "to

write"] ("To write before or in front"; hence) *To order, appoint, direct, prescribe.*

praescrip-tum, ti, n. [for praescrib-tum; fr. praescribo, "to order"] *An order, command.*

prae-sens, entis (abl. sing. usually praesente of persons, praesenti of things; adj. [p ae, "before"; s-um, "to be"] *Present.*

praesent-ia iae, f. [praesens, praesent-is, "present"] *A being present, presence.* Phrase: *In praesentiā. For the present, at present.*

prae-ser-tim, adv. [prae, "before"; sēro, "to arrange"] *Especially, particularly.*

praesid-ium, ii, n. [praesidēo, "to sit before"; hence, "to guard"] *Protection, defence. A protecting force, garrison, etc.*

prae-sto, stiti, stitum, stāre, 1. v. n. and a. [prae, "before"; sto, "to stand"] *Neut. : With Dat. : To be superior to; to surpass, excell. To give, supply, furnish.*

prae-sum, fūi, esse, v. n. [prae, "before"; sum, "to be"] *With Dat. : To be set over; to have the charge, or command of. To have the charge of, to preside over.*

prae-ter, prep. gov. acc. [prae, "before"; demonstrative suffix *ter*] *Past beyond. Besides, in addition to. Except.*

praetēr-ēā, adv. [for praeter-eam; fr. praeter, "beyond"; eam, acc. sing. fem. of *pron. is*, "this"] *Besides, moreover, further.*

prae-tor, tōris, m. [contracted fr. praetor; fr. praetō, "to go before," through root *I*, "to go"; hence, "a leader, chief"; hence] *A praetor; a Roman magistrate charged with the administration of justice.*

praetōr-ius, ia, ium, adj. [praetor, praetōr-is, "a commander, general"] *Of, or belonging to, a praetor; praetorian.*

prēces, um; see *prex*.

prē-hendo, hendi, hensum, hendere, 3. v. a. *To lay hold of firmly; to seize, grasp.*

prēmo, pressi, pressum, prēmere, 3. v. a. *In war : To press hard or close. To vex, harass, beset with difficulties.*

prendo, prendi, prensus, prendere, 3. v. a. *A contracted form of prehendo; see prehendo.*

prēt-ium, ti, n. *Price, cost* [akin to *πριασθαι*, "to buy"].

prex, prēc-is (Nom. and Gen. Sing. obsol.; mostly in plur., f. [for *prec s*; fr. *prēc-or*, "to ask"] *A prayer, request, entreaty, petition.*

prī-dīe, adv. [for *prae-dīe*; fr. *prae*, "before"; *dīe*, abl. sing. of *dīēs*, "day"] *On the day before*.

prim-o, prim-um, adv. [prim-us, "first"] *At first, in the first place*.

Prī-mus, mā, mūm, sup. adj. [for *prae-mus*; fr. *prae*, "before" with superlative suffix *mus*] *First, the first*. Of time: *When a thing is first or earliest*; i.e. *the first part, commencement, beginning, etc., of a thing*. In order, rank, *The first principal, etc.*

prin-cep-s, cip-is, adj. [for *prim-cap*; fr. *prim-us*, "first"; *cap-io*, "to take"] *First*; whether in order or time. Of rank: *The first, principal, chief*. As Subst.: **prīnceps**, ipis, m. *A chieftain; a chief person, leading man*.

prīncip-ātus, ātūs, m. [prīnceps, *prīncip-is*, "a chief"] *The first or chief place; the pre-eminence. Chief authority, chieftainship, the chief or first rank*.

prīs-tīnus, tīna, tīnum, adj. [obsol. *prīs*, "before"] *Former. Old, ancient*.

prīus, comp. adv. [adverbial neut. of *prior*, "before"] *Before, sooner*:—*prīus quam* (or, as one word, *prīusquam*), *sooner than, before that*.

prīusquam; see *prīus*.

prīvā-tus, ta, tum, adj. [prīv(a)-o, "to make *prīvus*," i.e. "single"] *Private*.

pro, prep. gov. abl.: *Before, in front of. For, in behalf of, in favour of. For, in the place of, instead of; esp. in connection with the title of any officer to denote his substitute; e.g. pro praetore, In proportion to, in comparison with. In accordance with, conformity to. As just as, for.*

prōb-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [prō-us, "good"] *To prove, demonstrate*.

prō-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdere, 3. v. n. [pro, "forward"; cēdo, "to go"] *To go forwards, advance*.

prō-curro, cūrri, and *cūrri*, cursum, currere, 3. v. n. [pro, "forwards"; curro, "to run"] *To run forwards, advance with a run or rapidly*.

prō-d-ēo, īvi, or īi, itum, īre, v. n. [pro, "forth or forwards"; d, epenthetic; eo "to go"] *To go, or come, forth or forwards; to advance*.

prō-do, didi, ditum, dēre, 3. v. a. [pro, "forth or forwards"; do, "to put"] *To hand down, transmit*.

prō-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcere, 3. v. a. [pro, "forward"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead forwards, or forth*.

proelium, īi, n. *A battle, engagement*.

prōfec-tio, tīōnis, f. [for *prōfac-tio*; fr. *prōficiscor*, "to set out," through root *FAC*] *A setting out, departure*.

prō-fīcio, fēcī, fectum, fīcere, 3. v. a. [for *prō-fācio*; fr. *pro*, "forward"; *fācio*, "to make"] *To effect, bring about, accomplish*.

prō-fic-iscor, fectus sum, fīcisci, 3. v. dep. n. inch. [pro, "forwards"; *fāc-io*, "to make"] *To set out, go, proceed, etc.*

prō-fūgio, fūgi, fūgitum, fūgere, 3. v. n. [pro, "forth"; fūgio, "to flee"] *To flee forth, run away, escape*.

prō-grēdiōr, gressus sum, grēdi, 3. v. dep. [for *pro-gradior*; from *pro*, "forth or forward"; *gradior*, "to step or go"] *To step, or go, forth or forward; to advance, proceed*.

prō-hībēo, hībui, hībītum, hībēre, 2. v. a. [for *prō-hābēo*; fr. *prō*, "before"; hābēo, "to hold"] *To hold or keep back, ward off, hinder, restrain, prevent*.

prō-jīcio, jēcī, jectum, jīcere, 3. v. a. [for *prō-jācio*; fr. *prō*, "forwards"; *jācio*, "to cast"] *To throw or cast forwards; projicere se ad pedes to throw themselves down at the feet of some one*.

prō-mōvēo, mōvi, mōtum, mōvēre, 2. v. a. [prō, "forwards"; mōvēo, "to move"] *Of a camp: To move forwards or onwards; to advance*.

prōpe, adv. and prep. [adverbial neut. of obsol. adj. *propis*, "near"] *Adv.: near. Comp.: prōp-ius. Nearer, Prep. gov. acc.: Near*.

prō-pello, pālī, pulsum, pellere, 3. v. a. [prō, "forwards"; pello, "to drive"] *To drive forwards or before one's self*.

prōp-inqu-us, a, um, adj. [for *prōp-hinc-us*; fr. *prōp-e*; *hinc*, "from this place"] *Near, neighbouring, nigh at hand, close. Of relationship: Near, related, kindred. As Subst.: prōpinqu-us, ī, m. A relation, relative, kinsman*.

prōpius; see *prope*.

prōpōno, pōsui, pōsitum, pōnere, 3. v. a. [pro, "before or forth"; pōno, "to put"] *To mention, state, declare. Of statement, etc.: To set forth, point out*.

prop-ter, prep. gov. acc. [obsolete adj. *prōp-is*, "near"] *On account, or by reason, of; because of*.

proptēr-ēā, adv. [for *propter eam*; fr. *propter*; *eam*, acc. sing. fem. of *is*, "this or that"] *On this, or that, account; therefore*:—*propterea quod, because that, inasmuch as*.

prōpul-so, sāvi, sātum, sāre, 1. v. a. intens. [propello, "to drive forwards," through true root *PROPUL*] *To repel, drive back, ward off*.

pro-spicio, spexi, spectum. spicere, 3. v. a. [for pro-specio; fr. pro, "before"; specio, "to see"] *To look out for, to make provision or provide for.*

proxim-e, sup. adv. [proxim-us] *Nearest, very near. Very recently, shortly before.*

proximus, a, um, sup. adj. [=proc-sinus, for prop-sinus; fr. obsol. prop-is, "near"; superlative suffix sinus] *Of place: Nearest, next; very near or close. Of time: The next, whether before or after; the following; the last.*

public-e, adv. [public-us, "public"] *Publicly, on behalf of the state.*

publicus, sca, leum, adj. [contracted and changed fr. popal-icus; fr. popul-us, "the people"] *Pertaining to the people; public (as opposed to "private").*

pud-dor, ōris, m. [pud-eo "to be ashamed"] ("A being :shamed"; hence) *Shame, a sense of shame.*

pud-er, ěri, m. *A boy, lad.*

pugna, nae, f. [root PUG, whence pu(n)g-o, "to puncture or stab"] *A fight hand to hand; a battle, engagement.*

pugno, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. [pugn-a] *To fight. Impers Pass.: pugnatum est, The battle was fought or waged.*

pur-go, gāvi, gātum, gāre, 1. v. a. [pur-us, "clean"] *To clear, or free, from a fault, etc.; to exculpate.*

pūto, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [pāt-us, "clean, clear"] *To deem, hold, think, suppose.*

Q.

quā, adv. [adverbial abl. fem. of qui] *Of place: At, or in, which place; where.*

quadr-ā-ginta, num. adj. indecl. ("Four tens" *i. e.*) *Forty* [contr. fr. quātuor-a-ginta; fr. quātuor; (a) connecting vowel; ginta = κόντα = "ten"].

quadr-i-n-gent-i, ae, a, num. adj. [changed fr. quatuor-i-n-cent-i; fr. quātuor, "four": (1) connecting vowel; (u) epenthetic; cent-um, "a hundred"] *Four hundred.*

quaero, quaesivi or quaesii, quaesitum, quaerere, 3. v. a.: *To seek. To ask, enquire.*

quaestor, tōris, [m. quaero, through root QUAES] ("A seeker") *A quaestor: a Roman magistrate.*

quā-lis, le, adj. *Of what sort or kind.*

quam, adv. [adverbial acc. fem. of quis] *In what manner, as, how, how much, as much as, Particular uses: After comp words: Than; see prius. With superl.: As much (or) little as possible. After designations of time: That.*

quam-diu, adv. [quam, "as"; diu, "for a long time"] *For as long a time as, as long as.*

quam-ob-rem, adv. [quam, acc. sing. fem. of qui, (relatively) "who, which"; (interrogatively) "what"; ob, "on account of"; res, "a thing"] *Relatively: From which cause or reason; wherefore. Interrogatively: wherefore, why.*

qua-ntus, nta, ntum, adj. *How great, how much;—in neut. with Gen. of thing measured.*

quā-re, adv. [abl. sing. of qui and res respectively; see quamobrem] *For which cause or reason; wherefore From what cause; why, wherefore.*

quar-tus, ta, tum, num, adj. [contr. fr. quatuor-tus, fr. quatuor, "four"] *Fourth.*

quātūor, num. adj. indecl. *Four* [akin to τέσσαρες, τέτταρες].

quātūor-dēcīm, num. adj. indecl. [for quatuor-decim; fr. quatuor, "four"] *decem, "ten"] Fourteen.*

que, enclitic conj. *And:—que . . . que, both . . . and* [akin to τέ].

quem-ad-mōdum, (or separately quem ad modum), adv. [ad, "after or according to"; with the acc. sing. of qui, "who, which": mōdus, "manner"] *After what manner; how; as.*

quēror, questus sum, quēri, 3. v. dep.: *To complain. To complain of* [root QUAES, "to sigh"].

qui, quae, quod, pron. Relative: *Who, which, what, that.* At the beginning of a clause instead of a conj. and demonstr. pron.: *And this, etc.* With subj.: *To point out a purpose, etc.: For the purpose of; that; in order to or that; to.* In a restrictive force: *As far as.* With ellipse of demonstrative pron: *He, or she, who; that which.* Quo, abl. sing. neut. with comparatives: *By how much: . . . quo . . . hoc (or eo), by how much . . . by so much; the . . . the.*

qui-cumque, quae-cumque, quod-cumque, pron. rel. [qui: suffix cumque] *Whoever, whatever; whosoever, whatsoever.*

quid, adv. [adverbial neut. of 1. quis. *For what purpose, etc.; wherefore, why*

quidam, quae-dam, quod-dam (and as Subst. quiddam), pron. indef. [qui, indefinite; suffix dam] *Particular, certain; some indefinite person or thing. As Subst. Masc. Sing.: A certain person. Plur.: Certain persons; some persons or other; some. Neut. Sing.: A certain thing. Plu.: Certain things.*

quidē, adv. *Indeed:—ne quidem, not even. At least, certainly, forsooth.*

qui-n, conj. [for qui-ne; fr. qui, abl. of relative pron. qui, "who, which"; ne = non] ("By which not") With Subj.: *That not, but what*. After words expressing doubt or ignorance: *That; that not; but that*.

quin-dēcim, num. adj. indecl. [for quinqu-decem; fr. quinqu-e, "five"; decem, "ten"] *Fifteen*.

quin-ētiam, conj. [or, as two words; quīn, "but indeed"; *But indeed too; yea too, moreover*].

quin-gent-i, ae, a, num. adj. [for quinqu-cent-i, fr. quinqu-e, "five"; centum, "a hundred"] *Five hundred*.

qui-ni, nae, na, num. distrib. adj. [for quinqu-e-ni; fr. quinqu-e, "five"] *Five*.

quinqu-ā-ginta, num. adj. indecl. *Fifty* [for quinqu-a-gintā; fr. quinquē, "five"; a) connecting vowel; ginta = *κατά* = "ten"]].

quinque, num. adj. indecl. *Five* [akin to Gr. *πέντε*, Sans. *panchan*].

quin-tus, ta, tum, num. adj. [for quinqu-tus; quinqu-e, "five"] ("Provided with five"; hence) *Fifth*.

quique = qui que.

quis, quae, quid, pron. interrog.: In direct questions: *What? i. e. what sort of a person or thing*. In indirect clauses: *Who or what; i. e. what person or thing*. As Subst.: **quis**, *What person, who*. **quid**, *What thing, what*.

quis, quid, pron. indef. *Anyone, anybody, anything; someone, somebody, something*: ne quis, *that no one* [τὴς].

quis-quam, quae-quam, quic-quam or quid-quam, pron. indef. [quis, "any one"; suffix quam] *Any, any whatever*. As Subst.: Masc.: *Any one, any body*; nec quisquam, *and that no one or nobody*. Neut.: *Any thing*.

quis-que, quae-que, quod-que, pron. indef. [quis, "any"; suffix que] *Each, every, any*. With superlatives to express universality: *Every most . . . all the most*.

quis-quis, no fem., quic-quid quid-quid or quod-quod, pron. indef. *Whatever, whatsoever*. As Subst.: **quis-quis**, m. *Whoever, whosoever*. **quic-quid**, n. *Whatever, or whatsoever, thing*.

quo, adv. [for quo-m, old form of que-m, acc. mase. sing. of qui, "who"] *Whither, where*. To the end that, in order that, so, that, that.

quo; see **qui**, no. 1. d.

quōd, conj. [adverbial acc. neut. sing. of quid] *In that, because that, inasmuch as. That. If so be that, as respects that, with respect to*. With other conjunctions: *But*: quod si, *but if*

quōn-iam, adv. [for quom-jam; fr. quom=quam, "since"; iam, "now"] *Since now, seeing then, because, whereas*.

quō-mīnus, conj. With Subj. after verbs of hindering, preventing, etc.: *That . . . not; from doing*.

quōdque, conj. *Also, too*: placed after the word to be emphasized.

quōt-annis, adv. (also, as two words, quot annis) [quot, "as many": of time, "each, every, all". annis, Abl. Plur. of annus, "a year," as Abl. of time] *Every year, each year, yearly*.

quōtīdī-ānus, āna, ānum, adj. [quōtīdī-e, "daily"] *Daily, every day*. Ordinary, usual, common.

quōt-i-dīe, adv. [quot, "as many": of time, "each, every": (f) connecting vowel; diē, abl. of dies, "day"] *On each or every day; daily*.

quōt-ies, adv. [quot, "how many"] *How many times, how often*.

quom (old form **quom**), relative adv. and causal conj. [for quom=quem, fr. qui, "who"] 1. Relative Adv.: *When*. 2. Causal Conj.: *Seeing that, since, as*.

R.

rād-ix, icis, f. Mostly plur.: *The lower part of a thing; the foot, bottom, etc., of a mountain, etc.*; ch. 38. [akin to *ρίζα* = *ῥιζο-σα*].

rāp-īna, īnae, f. [rap-io, "to plunder"] *Plunder, pillage, rapine*.

rā-tīo, tōnis, f. [rēor, "to reckon," through root RA] *A calculation, estimate. Condition, terms, way. Reason. Account, design, purpose*.

rātis, is, fem. *A raft, float*.

rēcens, ntis, adj. *Fresh, recent*.

rē-cīpio, cēpi, ceptum, cīpēre, 3. v. a. [for re-cāpio; fr. rē, cāpio; fr. rē, cāpio, "to take"; re, "back"] *To take or get back; to recover*. With Personal pron. in reflexive force: *To draw back or withdraw; to betake one's self. To recede. To admit*.

rē-cūs-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for re-caus-o; fr. re, "against"; caus-a, "a cause"] *To decline, refuse, shrink from*.

red-do, didi, dītum, dēre, 3. v. a. [red (=rē with d for de, demonstrative), "back"; do, "to give"] *To give back, return, restore*.

rēd-eo, īvi or īi, ītum, īre, v. n. [red (see reddo), "back"; eo, "to go"] *To go or come back; to return*.

rēd-īgo, ēgi, actum, īgēre, 3. v. a. [for rēd-āgo; fr. rēd (see reddo), "without force"; āgo, "to lead"] *To bring or reduce, into a certain state, etc.*

rēd-īmo, ēmi, emptum, īmēre, 2. v. a. [for *rēd-ēmo*, *rēd* (see *ēmo*, "to buy")] *To take by contract, to farm. To obtain, procure.*

rēd-integro, integrāvi, integrātum, integrāre, 1. v. a. [*rēd* (see *rēddo*), "again"; *intēgro*, "to make whole"] *To restore, renew.*

rēdī-tio, tionis, f. [*rēdēo*, "to return"; through true root *RED1*] *A returning, return.*

rē-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcēre, 3. v. a. [*rē*, "back"; *dūco*, "to lead"] *To lead, or conduct, back.*

rē-fēro, tūli, lātum, ferre, v. a. ir. [*rē*, "back"; *fēro*, (see *fēro*)] *To bring, or carry, back or backwards:—pedem referre, (to carry the foot backwards, i. e.) to retire, retreat. To give back, return, repay. To relate, mention.*

rē-giō, iōnis, f. [*rēg-o*, "to direct"] *A tract, territory, region.*

reg-num, ni, n. [*rēg-o*, "to rule"] *Sovereign, supreme power. A kingdom.*

rē-jicio, jēci, jectum, jicēre, 3. v. a. [for *rē-jācio*, fr. *rē*, "back"; *jācio*, "to cast"] *Of weapons: To cast, throw, or hurl back. To beat back, force back, repel, the enemy. To fling aside, cast away.*

rē-linguo, līqui, lictum, līquēre, 3. v. a. [*rē*, "behind"; *linguo*, "to leave"] *To leave behind in a place.*

rēli-qu-us, a, um, adj. [*rēlinquo*, through true root *LIG1*] *That is left or remains, remaining. As Subst.: rēli-quum, i. n. That which remains, a remainder:—nihil reliqui, (nothing of a remainder, i. e.) nothing remaining or left. The remaining part or rest, of that denoted by the Subst. to which it is joined. The rest, the remaining, the other. As Subst.: rēliqui, ōrum, m. plur. The rest, the others.*

rē-mān-ēo, mānsi, no sup., mānēre, 2. v. n. [*rē*, "behind"; *mānēo*, "to remain"] *To remain or stay behind.*

rē-mīn-iscor, no perf, isci, 3. v. dep. *To call back to mind, remember; with Gen. [*rē*, "again"; root *MEN*; see *mens*].*

rē-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [*rē*, "back"; *mitto*, "to send"] *To send back. To give up, surrender.*

rē-mōvēo, mōvi, mōtum, mōvēre, 2. v. a. [*rē*, "back"; *mōvēo*, "to move"] *To remove, withdraw, send away.*

rē-mūnērōr, mūnērātus sum, mūnērārī, 1. v. dep. [*rē*, "in return"; *mūnērōr*, "to give, or bestow, as a present"] *To recompense, reward, repay, requite.*

rēm-us, i, m. *An oar.*

rē-nuntio, nuntīāvī, nuntīātum, nuntīāre, 1. v. a. [*rē*, "back"; *nuntio*, "to

bring word"] *To bring, or carry, backward; to report. Impers. Pass.: renuntiat: Word is brought back, it is reported:—renuntiatum est, Word was brought back, it was reported.*

rē-pēllo, pēli, pulsum, pellēre, 3. v. a. [*rē*, "back"; *pello*, "to drive"] *To drive back, repulse, repel.*

rēpent-e, adv. [*rēpens*, *repent-is*, "sudden"] *Suddenly, on a sudden.*

rēpent-inus, ina, inum, adj. [*rēpens*, *repent-is*, "sudden"] *Sudden, unexpected.*

rē-pēriō, pēri, pertum, pērire, 4. v. a. [for *rēpāriō*; fr. *rē*, "again"; *pāriō*, "to produce"] *To find or meet with. To find out, discover, ascertain.*

rē-pēto, pētīvi or pētī, pētītum, pētēre, 3. v. a. [*rē*, "back"; *pēto*, "to seek"; hence, "to demand"] *To demand back; to claim.*

rē-prēhendo, prēhendi, prēhensum, prēhendēre, 3. v. a. [*rē*, "back"; *prēhendo*, "to seize"] *To blame, censure, find fault with, reprehend.*

rēpūdī-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [*rēpudi-um*, "a divorce"; hence, "to divorce"; hence] *To reject, refuse.*

rē-pugno, pugnāvi, pugnātum, pugnāre, 1. v. n. [*rē*, "against or in opposition"; *pugno*, "to fight"] *To resist, oppose, prove an obstacle.*

rēs, rēi, f. ("That which is spoken of"; hence) *A thing, matter, affair* [akin to *ῥῆ-μα*, fr. *rē-ω*, "to speak"].

rē-scindo, scīdi, scissum, scindēre, 3. v. a. [*rē*, "away"; *scindo*, "to cut"] *To cut away or to pieces; to break up a bridge.*

rē-scisco, scīvi or scīi, scītum, sciscēre, 3. v. a. [*rē*, "without force"; *scisco*, "to ascertain"] *To ascertain, find out, learn, get intelligence of.*

rē-servo, servāvi, servātum, servāre, 1. v. a. [*rē*, "back"; *servo*, "to keep"] *To keep back, reserve.*

rē-sisto, stiti, stitum, sistēre, 3. v. n. [*rē*, "against"; *sisto*, "to stand"] *To withstand, resist, make opposition or resistance; with Dat. Impers. Inf. Pass.: Resisti, That resistance should be offered.*

rē-spondēo, spondi, sponsum, spondēre, 2. v. a. and n. [*rē*, "in return"; *spondēo*, "to promise solemnly"] *To answer, reply.*

respon-sum, si, n. [for *respond-sum*; fr. *respond-ēo*, "to answer"] *An answer, reply, response.*

res-publica, rēi-publicae, f. *res; publica* (fem. of *publicus*), "public"] *The commonwealth, state.*

rē-spūo, spūi, spūtum, spūere, 3. v. a. [rē, "back"; spūo, "to spit"] ("To spit back"; hence) *To reject, refuse.*

rē-stītūo, stītūi, stītūtum, stītūere, 3. v. a. [for rē-statuo fr. rē, "again"; statuo, "to set up"] *To set up again, replace. To restore.*

rē-tīnēo, tīnūi, tentum, tīnēre, 2. v. a. [for rē-tēnēo; fr. rē, "back"; tēnēo, "to hold"] *To hold, or keep, back: to detain. To restrain.*

rē-vello, velli, vulsum, vellēre, 3. v. a. [rē, "away"; vello, "to pluck"] *To pluck or pull away; to tear apart.*

rē-vertor, versus sum, verti, 3. v. dep. [rē, "back"; vertor, "to turn one's self"] *To return.*

rex, rēgis, m. [for reg-s; fr. reg-o, "to rule"] *A king.*

rhēda, ae, f. *A four-wheelēd chariot or carriage* [Gallic word].

ripa, ae, f. *A bank of a river or stream.*

rōgo, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To ask, beg, request, solicit.*

rōt-a, ae, f. *A wheel* [akin to Sans. *ratha*, "a car or chariot"].

rursus, adv. [contr. fr. *rēversus*, "turned back"] ("Back, backwards"; hence) *Back again; again, anew, afresh.*

S.

saep-e, adv. [adverbial neut. of obsol. *saep-is*, "frequent"] *Frequently, often, oftentimes.* Particular adverbial expression: *saep-enūmēro* (= *saepe*; *nūmēro*, abl. of *numerus*, "number") *Oftentimes, frequently, over and over again.*

sālū-s, tis, f. [for *salv-ts*; fr. *salv-ēo*, "to be well or in good health"] *Safety, preservation.*

sancio, sanxi, sanctum, sancire, 4. v. a. [*sanc*, a strengthened form of the root *sac*, whence *sac-er*, "sacred"] *To confirm, ratify.*

sān-itas, itātis, f. [*san-us*, "sound" in mind] *Soundness of mind, right reason.*

sarc-ina, inae, f. [*sarc-īo*, "to patch"] *A package*:—Plur., *Baggage.*

sāt-is, adj. and adv. : Adj. : *Enough, sufficient, satisfactory*: *satis habere*, *to hold or deem enough*, etc.; with Gen. of "thing measured," *causae Comp. n.*: *Satius*, *Better, preferable*; Adv. : *To diminution, like the English, "enough": Moderately, tolerably.*

sātis-fācio, fēci, factum fācere, 3. v. n. With Dat. *To give satisfaction to, whether by word or deed; to make amends; to ask pardon of or apologize to a person offended.*

sātisfac-tio, tīōnis, f. [*sātisfac-īo*, "to satisfy"] *Satisfaction. amends, apology, made to a person offended.*

scēlus, ēris, n. *A wicked deed; wickedness, guilt.*

sciēnt-ia, lae, f. [*sciens*, *scient-is*, "knowing"] ("A knowing"; hence) *Knowledge.*

scīo, scīvi or scīi, scītum, scīre, 4. v. a. *To know.*

scū-tum, ti, n. *A shield* [akin to Sans. root *sku*, "to cover"].

sēc-rēt-o, adv. [*sēc-rēt-us* "secret"] *Secretly, privately.*

sēcund-um, prep. gov. acc. [*sēcund-us*, "following"] ("Following after"; hence) *Immediately after, next to, after, in time or succession. According, to, in accordance with.*

sēc-undus, unda, undum, ādj. [for *sēqu-or*, "to follow"] (Following"; hence) *Second. Favourable, propitious, fortunate.*

sēc-us, adv. [prob. for *sēquus*; fr. *sēquor*, "to follow"] In comp. with *nihilō*, (*less by nothing*; i.e.) *none the less, nevertheless*; here *nihilō* is abl. of measure.

sed, conj. "same word as *sed* = *sine*, "without" *But.*

sē-dēcim, (sometimes written *sexdecim*), num. adj. indecl. [for *sex-decem*; *sex-decem*; fr. *sex*, "six": *dēcem*, "ten"] *Sixteen.*

sēd-es, is, f. [*sēd-ēo*, "to sit"] *A dwelling-place, abode.* Plur. : *A settlement* as comprising the abodes of several persons.

sēdītī-ōsus, ōsa, ōsum, adj. [contracted fr. *sēdītīōn-ōsus*; f. *sēdītīo*, *sēdītīōn-is*, "sedition"] *Seditious.*

sēm-el, adv. *Once* [akin to Gr. *ἓμ-ος*, "one and the same"; Sans. *sam-a*, "same"].

sēm-en-tis, tis, f. [f. for *sēmīn-tis*; fr. *sēmīn-o*, "to sow"] *A sowing of seed.*

semper, adv. *Ever, always, at all times* [akin to Sans. *sam-a*, in force of "all"].

sēn-ātus, ātus, m. [*senex*, *sēn-is*, "old man"] *The Senate*; i.e. *the council, or assembly of elders*; and elsewhere, of the Roman *Senate.*

sēnātusconsultum; see *consultum.*

sēn-ex, sēnis, adj. comm. gen. [*sen-eo*, "to be old"] *Old, aged, advanced in years.* As Subst. : comm. gen. : *An old man.*

sē-ni, nae, na, num, distrib. adj. plur. [for sex-ni; fr. sex, "six"] *Six each, or apiece. Six.*

sentent-īa, lae, f. [for sentient-īa; fr. sentiēdis, sentient-is, "thinking"] *An opinion.*

sentio, sensi, sum, sentire, 4. v. a. *To perceive.*

sēpārā-tim, adv. [sēpār(a)-o, "to separate"] ("By a separating"; hence) *Separately, apart.*

sept-em, num. adj. indecl. *Seven* [akin to ἐπτά].

septen-trio, triōnis (more frequently plur.), m. [*The North*].

sept-imus, ima, imum, num. ord. adj. [sept-em] *Seventh.*

sēpul-tūra, tūrae, f. [sēpēlio, "to bury"; through root SEPUL] *A burying, burial.*

sēqu-or, ūtus, sum, i, 3. v. dep.: *To follow. To follow in pursuit of, pursue* [akin to Gr. ἐπομαι].

serv-ilis, ile, adj. [serv-us, "a slave"] *Of, or belonging to, a slave; servile.*

serv-itus, itūtis, f. [serv-us, "a slave"] *Slavery, bondage, servitude.*

serv-us, i, m. *A slave, servant* [akin to Gr. ἑρσω, "to drag."]

sex, num. adj. indecl. *Six* [ἑξ].

sex-a-gint-a, num. adj. indecl. [sex, "six"; (ā); ginta=κοιτα, "ten"] *Sixty.*

sex-cent-i, ae, a, num. adj. [sex, "six"; cent-um, "a hundred"] *Six hundred.*

sēxdēcim; see sedecim.

si, conj. *If* [εἰ].

si-c, adv. [for si-ce, akin to hic, "this"; suffix ce] *In this way, so, thus; in like manner. To such a degree, so much:—sic, ut, to such a degree, that.*

sic-ut, adv. [sic, "so"; ut, "as"] *So as, just as.*

signum, i, n. *A military standard or ensign:—signa ferre, to carry on the standards, i.e. to break up the camp:—for inferre signa see infero. A signal.*

silva, ae, f. *A wood, forest* [akin to ὕλη].

sim-ül, adv. *Together, at once, at the same time:—simul atque, as soon as* [akin to Gr. ὁμο-οιος, "like"; Sans. sam-a, "same"].

simülätio, tiōnis, f. [-imul(a)-o, "to feign"] ("A feigning"; hence) *A feint pretence, dissimulation.*

sim-ulo, ävi, ätum, äre, 1. v. a. [for simül-o; fr. simül-is, "like"] ("to make like"; hence) *To feign, pretend, dissemble.*

si-n, conj. [shortened fr. si-ne; fr. si, "if"; ne, "not"] *If on the contrary, if however, but if.*

sine, prep. gov. abl. [akin to se, "apart; without"] *Without.*

sin-güli gulae, güla (rare, in sing.), num. distrib. adj. *One by one, single.* In adverbial force: *Individually* [akin to εἰς, ἐν-ός, "one"].

sinister, tra, trum, adj. *Left, i.e. on the left hand or side.* As Subst.: **sin-istra**, aë, f. *The left hand or side.*

si-quis, qua, quid or quod, indef. pron. [si, "if"; quis, "any"] *If any.* As Subst. m.: **siquis**, *If any one.*

si-ve (contr. seu), conj. [si, "if"; ve, "or"] *Or if, whether:—sive, (seu) . . . sive (seu), be it that . . . or that; if . . . or if; whether . . . or.*

söcer, cëri, m. *A father-in-law* [akin to Gr. ἐκρυ-ός; Sans. çraçur-a].

söcius, ii, m. *An ally, confederate.*

söl, sölis, m. *The sun:—solis, occasus, (sunset=) the West:—sol oriens, (the rising sun=) the East* [akin to Gr. ἥλ-ιος; Sans. svar].

söl-um, adv. [söl-us, "alone"] *Only, merely.*

söhum, i, n. *Ground, soil.*

sölus, a, um (Gen., sollus; Dat., soli), adj. *Alone, only, sole.*

söror, öris, f. *A sister:—soror ex matre, a sister by his mother, i.e. a half-sister on his mother's side.*

sors, tis, f. *A lot.*

spätium, ii, n. *Distance, interval.* Of time: *Space, interval.*

spëci-es, ëi, f. [spëci-o, "to see"] *Appearance, show.*

spec-to, tävi, tätum, täre, 1. v. a. intens. [id.] *To look at earnestly. To regard.*

spëcül-or, ätus sum, äri, 1. v. dep. n. [specul-a, "a watch-tower"] *To spy, act the spy.*

spër-o, ävi, ätum, äre, 1. v. a. *To hope, expect.*

spës, ëi (Gen. Dat. and Abl. Plur. only in post-classical writers), f. *Hope, expectation.*

spir-itus, itūs, m. [spir-o, "to breathe"] *In bad sense and mostly in plur.: Haughtiness, pride, arrogance.*

spon-tis, Gen., and **spon-te**, Abl. [fr. an obsolete spons, of which no other cases than the above are found], f. [for spond-tis and spond-te, fr. spond-ëo, "to pledge"] (Gen. spondtis o curs only in phrase Suae spondtis esse. *To be one's own master, or at one's own disposal.*) Abl.

sponte, with or without possessive pron.: *Of one's (my, thine, his, etc.) own accord; freely, spontaneously.*

stā-tim, adv. [st(a)-o, "to stand"] *Immediately, at once.*

stātūō, -stātūi, statūtum. stātūēre, 3. v. a. *Consider, deem, judge.*

stipendī-ārius, āria, ārium, adj. [stipend-ium, "tribute"] *Tributary.*

stī-pend-ium, ii, n. [for stip-pend-ium; fr. stips, stip-is in original force of "small coin" heaped up; pendo, "to pay"] *Tribute, impost, tax, payable in money, as distinguished from vectigal, which was paid in kind.*

stūd-ēō, ūi, no sup., ēre, 2. v. a. *To be eager for, very desirous of.*

stūd-ium, ii, n. [stūd-ēō, "to be eager"] *Eagerness, eager, desire. Zeal, energy.*

sūb, prep. gov. Acc. and Abl.: *With Acc.: Under, below, beneath. Near, close to. With Abl.: Under. At the foot of. Of time: In, during, at.*

sub-dūcō, duxi, ductum, dūcēre, 3. v. a. [sūb, "from below"; dūcō, "to draw"] *Of troops: To withdraw, draw off.*

sūb-ēō, īvi or īi, itum, īre, v. a. [sūb, "under"; ēō, "to go"] *To enter. To undergo.*

sūbīt-o, adv. [sūbīt us, "sudden"] *Suddenly on a sudden.*

sub-jīcō, jēci, jectum jīcēre, 3. v. a. [for sub-jācō; fr. sub, "under"] jācō, "to throw"] *To throw, place, or bring under or beneath. To expose to peril.*

sūb-lēvō, lēvāvi, lēvātum, lēvāre, 1. v. a. [sūb, "from beneath"; lēvō, "to lift up"] *To raise, or hold up. To assist, aid.*

sub-mīnistro, mīnistrāvi, mīnistrātum, mīnistrare, 1. v. a. [sub, "without force"; mīnistro, "to supply"] *To supply furnish.*

sub-sīd-ium, ii, n. [for sub-sēd-ium; fr. sub, "behind"; sēdēō, "to sit"] *Of troops, etc.: A body of reserve; the reserves. Aid, assistance, succour.*

sub-sisto, stiti, stitum, sistēre, 3. v. n. [sūb, "without force"] sistō, "to stand"] *To take a stand or position.*

sub-sum, fūi, ēsse, v. n. [sūb, "beside, near"; sum, "to be"] *To be beside or near; to be at hand.*

sub-trāhō, traxi, tractum, trāhēre, 3. v. a. [sūb, "from below"; trahō, "to draw"] *Of troops: To draw off, withdraw.*

sub-vēhō, vexi, vectum, vēhere, 3. v. a. [sub, "from below"; vēhō, "to car-

ry"] *To carry, bring, or convey up a stream or by a stream.*

suc-cēdō, cessi, cessum, cēdēre, 3. v. n. [for sub-cēdō; fr. sūb, towards or up to"; cēdō, "to go or come"] *To go or come, towards or up to; to approach.*

sui, (no Nom.: Dat. sibi; Acc. and Abl. se, or reduplicated sese (same in both numbers), pron. reflex. *Of etc. himself, herself, itself, or themselves.*

sum, fūi, esse, v. n.: *To be* With Gen.: *To be the property of; to belong to* [in pres. tenses akin to ēō-μi=ēi-μi, and Sans. root AS, "to exist, to be": in Perf. tenses akin to φύ-ω, φῦ-μi, and Sans. root BHU, "to be"].

summa, ae, f. [summ-us, "highest"] *The whole of any thing, as o p. to a part: summa belli, the whole conduct or management of the war.*

sum-mōvēō, mōvi, mōtum, mōvēre, 2. v. a. [for sub-mōvēō, "to move"] *To drive off or away.*

sū-mo, mpsi, mptum, mōre, 3. v. a. [contr. fr. sub-emo; fr. sub, "up"; emo, "to take"] *To take up, to lay hold of. To take by choice; to choose, select. A punishment; To inflict.*

sum-ptus, ptūs, N. [sūm-o, "to spend"] *Expense, cost, charge etc.*

sūperb-e, adv. [superb-us, "proud"] *Proudly, haughtily, arrogantly.*

sūpēr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [super, "past"] *To conquer, vanquish, overcome.*

sūpēr-sum, fūi, esse, v. n. [sūpēr, "over and above"; sum, "to be"] *To remain; to be left as a remainder.*

sūpēr-us, a, um, adj. [sūpēr, "above"] Pos.: "That is above; on high". Com: **sūpērior**, us: *Of locality: Higher, upper.* Of time: *Former, preceding.* Sup.: **summus**, a, um: *Of locality: Highest. The highest part of that denoted by the substantive to which it is in attribution. Of degree, etc.: Highest, utmost, very great. Most important.*

sup-pēto, petivi or pētīi, pētītum, pētēre, 3. v. n. [for subpēto; fr. sūb, "near"; pēto, "to go to"] *To be in hand or in store.*

supplic-iter, adv. [supplex, supplic-is, "suppliant"] *As a suppliant would, submissively, humble.*

supplic-ium, ii, n. [supplic-o, "to kneel down"] *Punishment.*

sup-porto, portāvi, portātum, portāre, 1. v. a. [for sub-porto; fr. sub, "up to"; porto, "to carry"] *To carry, convey, or bring up to.*

supra, adv. and prep. [contracted fr. original form *sūpērā*, adverbial abl. of *sūpērus*] Adv. : Of time : *Before, above, previously*. Prep. gov. acc. *Above*.

suscipio, cēpi, ceptum, cipere, 3. v. a. [for subs-cāpio; fr. subs(=sūb), "from beneath": cāpio, "to take"] *To undertake*.

suspicio, ōnis, f. [suspicio-or, "to suspect"] *Suspicion*.

suspicio, ōnis, sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [suspicio, "to look at secretly": hence, "to mistrust"—in which sense it is found, perhaps, only in participles] *To mistrust, suspect*.

sustinēo, tināi, tentum, tinēre, 2. v. a. [for subs-tēnēo, fr. subs(=sub), "upwards, up": tēnēo, "to hold"] *To bear, support, sustain, maintain. To bear up against, withstand. To check, restrain*.

sū-us, a, um, possess. pron. [1. sū-i] *Of, or belonging to, himself (herself, etc.); his, etc., own. As subst.: sūi, ōrum, m. plur. Their countrymen, etc. sūa, ōrum, n. plur. Their, etc., things, property, etc.*

T.

tābernā-cūlum, cūli, n. [tāberna, uncontr. Gen. tābernā-i, "a hut"] *A tent*.

tā-būla, būlae, f. *A writine, list, etc.*

tāc-ēo, ūi, itum, ēre, 2. v. n. and a. Neut. : *To be silent, hold one's peace*. Act. : *To be silent, or to hold one's peace, about*.

tāc-itus, ita, itum, adj. [tāc-ēo, "to be silent"] *Silent, holding one's peace, in silence*.

tam, adv. [prob. akin to tālis, "such"] With Adj. : *So, so very*.

tam-diū, adv. [tam, "so"; diū, "for a long time"] *For so long a time, so long*.

tāmen, adv. [perhaps a lengthened form of tam, "so"] ("In so far": hence) *Nevertheless, however, notwithstanding, yet, still*.

tām-etsi, conj. [contr. for tāmen-etsi; fr. tāmen, "however"; etsi, "though"] *However though, notwithstanding, although*.

tan-dem, adv. [for tam-dem; fr. tam, "so far," with suffix dem] *At length, at last*.

tanti, tantōpēre; see tant-us.

tant-us, a, um, adj. : *So much*. Adverbial expression : *Tantopere*, also written separately *tanto opere*, (=tanto, abl. of tantus; opere, abl. of opus, "work"; With so great a work; i. e.) *So greatly. So great*. *Tanti*, Elliptic Gen. of quality or value *Of so great price or value*.

tec-tum, ti, n. [for teg-tum; fr. tēg-o, "to cover"] *The roof of a building. A house, dwelling, building*.

tēlum, i, n. *A weapon*, whether for hurling or for close quarters [commonly referred to τῆλε, "afar off"; but rather for tend-lum, fr. tend-o, "to hurl or launch"; and so "that which is hurled or launched"].

tēmēr-ārius, āriā, ārium, adj. [obsol. *temer-us*, "despising"] *Rash, heedless*.

tēmēr-e, adv. [id] *Rashly, inconsiderately*.

tempērant-ia, iae, ir. [temperans, temperant-is, "moderate"] *Moderation*.

tempēr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [prob. akin to tempus, in its etymological force; see tempus] *To refrain, abstain, forbear*. With Dat. of reflexive pron. : *To moderate, or restrain one's self*.

tem-pus, pōris, n. *Time or season of the year. Time in general; omni tempore, at every time, i. e. always* [root TEM, akin to τρέμω, "to cut"]

tēnēo, ūi, tum, ēre, 2. v. a. *To hold. memoriā tenere, to hold, or keep, in memory; to remember, recollect. To hold or keep back; to restrain. To occupy*.

ten-to, tāvi, tātum, tāre, 1. v. a. intens. [tēn-ēo] *To attempt, endeavor to do*.

ter, num, adv. [tres, tī-um (with e inserted), "three"] *Three times, thrice*.

tergum, i, n. *The back*, whether of men or beasts :—terga vertēre, *to turn the backs, i. e. to take to flight, to flee*.

ter-ra, ae, f. *The earth*, as such. *The earth, soil, ground*, [prob. akin to Gr. τέρραμαι, "to be, or become, dry"]

ter-tius, tia, tium, adj. [tres, t(e)r-ium, "three"] *The third*.

test-īmōnium, imōni, n. test-or, "to bear witness"] *Witness, evidence, testimony*.

tes-tis, is, comm. gen. *A witness*.

tīmēo, ūi, no sup., ēre, 2. v. a. and n. Act. : *To be afraid of, to fear*. Neut. : *To fear, be afraid*.

tīm-idus, ida, idum, adj. [tīm-ēo] *Fearful, afraid, timid*.

tīm-or, ōris, m. [tīm-ēo] *Fear, terror*.

tōl-ēro, ērāvi, ēratum, ērāre, 1. v. a. [root tol; see tollo] *To bear, endure*.

tollo, sustūli, sublātum, tol'ere [root tol, whence tuli; see fero] *To lift up;—tollere anchoram, to weigh anchor. To take up from its, etc., place; to carry or convey away. To do away with, remove*.

tōt-idem, num, adj. indecl. [tot, "so many"] *Just so many, just as many*.

tō-tus, ta, tum, adj. ("Increased"; hence) *All, all the, the whole, the whole of* (denoting a thing in its entirety).

trā-do, didi, ditum, dēre, 3. v. a. tra (=trans), "across"; do, "to give"] *To give up, hand over, surrender.*

trag-ūla, ūlae, f. [for trāh-ūla; fr. trah-o, "to drag"] *A kind of large javelin.*

trā-ho, traxi, tractum, trāhēre, 3. v. a. *To drag away, or along.*

trans, prep. gov. acc. *Beyond, across, over.*

trans-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcēre, 3. v. a. [trans, "across"; ēo, "to lead"] *To lead across.*

trans-ēo, ivi or ii, itum, ire, v. a. irreg. [trans, "across"; ēo, "to go"] *To go across a thing; to cross, or pass, over.*

trans-figo, fixi, fixum, figēre, 3. v. a. [trans, "through"; figo, "to fix"; "to pierce"] *To pierce through, transfix.*

trans-nāto, nātavi, nātātum, nātāre, 1. v. a. [trans, "across"; nāto, "to swim"] *To swim across*

trans-porto, portāvi, portātum, portāre, v. a. [trans, "across"; porto, "to carry"] *To carry, or convey, across or over; to transport.*

trē-cēnt-i, ae, a, num. adj. [for tri-cent-i; fr. tres, tri-um, "three"; cent-um, "a hundred"] *Three hundred.*

tres, tria (Gen. trium), num. adj. *Three* [τρεις, τρία].

trib-ūnus, ūni, m. [trib-us, "a tribe"] *A tribune*:—tribunus militum, *a military tribune.*

trib-ūo, ūi, ūtum, ūēre, 3. v. a. *To ascribe, assign.*

tri-d-ūm, ūi, n. [for tri-di-uum; fr. tres, tri-um, "three"; di-es, "a day"] *A space of three days; three days.*

tri-ginta, num. adj. indecl. ("Three tens"; hence) *Thirty* [tres, tri-um, "three"] ginta=κοιτα="ten"].

tri-ni, nae, na, num. distrib. adj. [tres, tri-um, "three"] *Three.*

tri-plex, plicis, adj. [for triplic-s; fr. trēs, tri-um, "three"; plico, "to fold"] *Three-fold, triple.*

tris-tis, te, adj. *Sadness, sorrowful.*

trist-itia, itiae, f. [trist-is, "sad"] *Sadness, sorrow.*

tum, adv. *At that time; then.*

tūm-ultus, ultūs, m. [prob. tūm-ēo, "to swell"] *Tumult, uproar, disturbance. Insurrection, sedition.*

tūm-ulus, ūli, m. [id.] *A rising ground, mound.*

turpis, e, adj. *Shameful, base, disgraceful.*

U.

ū-bi, adv. [akin to qui] *Of time: When*:—ubi primum, (*when first*, i.e.) *as soon as.* *Of place: Where.*

ulciscor, ultus sum, ulcisci, 3. v. dep. *To punish, take vengeance on.*

ul-lus, la, lum, adj. [for unlus; un-us, "one"] *Any.* As Subst.: **ullus**, ius, m. *Any one.*

ultēr-ior, ius, comp. adj. [obsoi. ulter, "that is beyond"] *Further.*

ultr-a, prep. gov. acc. [obsoi. ulter, ultr-i, "that is beyond"] *Beyond.*

ultr-o, adv. [id] *To the further side, on the other side; beyond*:—ultr-o citroque; see citro. *On his, etc., part; of one's own accord.*

ūn-ā, adv. [adverbial abl. of ūn-us, "one"] *At one and the same time; in company, together.*

ūnde, adv. [for cu-nde (=qu-nde), fr. qu-i, "who, which"] *From which place, whence.*

und-ī-que, adv. und-e; connecting vowel: que, indefinite suffix] *From all parts or every quarter. On all sides.*

un-quam, adv. [un-us, "one"] *At any (one) time; ever.*

ūn-us, a, um Gen. ūnius; Dat. ūni), adj. *One.* As Subst. n.: **unum**, *One thing. Alone, only.*

urb-s, is, f. [prob. urb-o, "to mark out with a plough"] *A city, a walled town.* Amongst the Romans: **THE city**, i. e. Rome.

u-s-que, adv. [akin to qui: with (s epenthetic; quē, indefinite suffix] *Even*:—usque ad, *even up to or till a stated time; even up to a stated place.*

ū-sus, sūs, m. [for ut-sus, fr. ūt-or] *Use, employment. Service, advantage, benefit.*

ut, (originally ūti), adv. and conj. [prob. akin to qui] *Adv.*: *As. When.* *Conj.*: *That=to with English Inf. So that. To the end that, in order that.*

ūt-er, ra, rum (Gen. utrius; Dat. utri), adj. [prob. like ut, akin to qui] *Whether, or which, of the two; which. One, or the other; either one; either of two.*

ūter-que, utrāque, utrumque (Gen. utrius-que; Dat. utri-que), pron. adj. [uter, "which" of two; "one or the other"; que, "and"] *Both one and the other; both, each.*

ūti; see ut.

ūtor, ūsus sum, ūti, 3. v. dep. *With Abl.*: *To use, make use of, employ. Of*

aws: *To enjoy the exercise of. Of peace: To be in possession of, enjoy.*

utr-im-que. adv. [uterque ("both one and the other"), utr-(ius)-que; with adverbial suffix im inserted between que and the first portion of this compound word] *On both sides.*

utrum. adv. [adverbial neut of uter] *Whether* —utrum . . . an, *whether* . . . or; —utrum . . . necne, *whether* . . . or not.

uxor, ōris, f. *A wife, spouse.*

V.

vāc-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. *To be empty, void, or vacant; to be unoccupied.*

vādum, i. u. [vād-o, "to go"] ("That through which one can go"; hence) *A shallow, shoal.*

vāg-or, ātus sum, āri. 1. v. dep. [vag-us, "wandering"] *To wander, roam at large, etc.*

vāl-ēo, ūi, itum, ēre, 2. v. n. ("To be strong or vigorous" in body; hence *To be strong in some respect; i.e. to be powerful, etc. To prevail* [prob. akin to Sans. *bal-a*, "strength"].

vall-um, i, n. [akin to vall-us, "a stake, palisade," etc.] *An earthen wall, or rampart, set with stakes, palisades, etc.; a palisaded mound.*

vast-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [vast-us, "empty"] *To lay waste, devastate, ravage.*

ve. enclitic conj. *Or* [akin to Sans. *vā*, "or"].

vect-igal, īgālis, n. [vect-is, in etymological force of "carrying"] *A tax, impost, etc., paid to a state or sovereign.*

vēhēmēn-ter, adv. *Violently. Strongly, powerfully, vigorously.*

vel, conj. [akin to vol-o, velle, "to wish"] *Or if you will, or:—vel . . . vel, either . . . or.*

vēl-ox, ōcis, adj. [prob. for vol-ox, fr. vol-o, "to fly"] *Swift, quick, speedy.*

vēl-ūt, adv. [vel. "even"; ut, "as"] *Even as, just as.*

vēnio, vēni, ventum, vēnire, 4. v. n. *To come; with Acc. of place "whither,"* Roman. Impers. Pass. ventum est, *it was come by them, i.e. they came.*

verbum, i, n. *A word.*

vēr-ēor, itus sum, ēri, 2. v. dep. *To fear, dread, be afraid of.*

verg-o, (perf. acc. to some versi), no sup., ēre, 3. v. n. *To bend, turn, incline itself; i.e. of places, to lie or be situate in any direction; to verge towards.*

vēr-o, adv. [vēr-us, "true"] ("In truth"; hence) *But in fact, but indeed, however.*

(ver-so, sāvi, sātum, sāre, 1. v. a. intens. for vert-so, fr. vert-o, "to turn") *To turn much or often; to keep turning; to be engaged, occupied, etc.*

verto, verti, versum, vertēre, 3. v. a. *To turn.*

vēr-us, a, um, adj. *True.*

vesper, eris and eri, m. *The evening* [Ἑσπερός].

vētēr-ānus, āna, ānum, adj. [vētus, vetēr-is, "old"] ("Pertaining to the *vetus*"; hence, "of long standing"; hence) *Of soldiers: Having served for a long time, veteran.*

vēt-us, ēris, adj. ("That has existed, etc., for years"; hence) *That has existed for a long time, old, ancient* [akin to ēt-os, "a year," with digamma prefixed].

vexo, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. intens. [=veh-so; fr. veh-o] *To harass, ravage, lay waste.*

vīa, (old form vē-a), ae, f. *A way, road* [akin to Sans. *vaha*, "a road"; fr. root *vah*, "to carry"].

vic-tor, tōris, m. vinco, "to conquer," through root vic] *Conqueror, victor.* As Adj.: *Conquering, victorious.*

victōr-ia, iae, f. [victōr, victōr-is, "a conqueror." *Conquest, victory.*

vic-tus, tū, m. [for vigvtus; vīvo, "to live"; through root vicv] *A living; a way, or mode, of life.*

vīc-us, i, m. *A village* [akin to oīk-os, "a house," with digamma prefixed].

video, vidi, vīsum, vidēre, 2. v. a. Act.: *To see* [vid, in original force of "to see."

vīgīl-ia, iae, f. [vigil-o, "to watch"] *A watch by night.* The Romans divided the night into four watches, of three hours each, commencing at 6 o'clock in the evening, and ending at 6 o'clock in the morning.

vīginti, num. adj. indecl. *Twenty* [for bi-ginti; fr. bi (=bis), "twice"; ginti = κοῖτα = "ten"].

vincio, vinxi, victum, vincire, 4. v. a. [prob. akin to vinco] *To bind, tie.*

vinco, vici, victum, vincere, 3. v. a. *To conquer, overcome, vanquish.*

vinc-ulum, ūli, n. [vinc-io, "to bind"] *A chain, bond, fetter.*

vīres; see vis.

vir-tus, tūtis, f. [vir, "a man"] *Courage, bravery, valour.*

vis, vis(plur, vīres, lum), f.: *Strength, might. Power. Force, violence.*

vī-ta, tae, f. [for viv-ta ; fr. vivo, "to live"] *Life*.

vīto, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To avoid, shun, shrink from.*

vix, adv. *With difficulty, scarcely, hardly.*

vōco, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To call. To cite, summon* [Gr. εἰπ-εῖν, "to say"; also to Sans. root vaci, "to speak"].

vōlo, vōlāi, no sup., velle, v. a. irreg. *To be willing ; to wish, desire. To have a wish or desire for.* Only in interrogations, whether direct or indirect : *To signify, mean* akin to βόλ-ομαι (=βούλ-ομαι), "to wish".

vōlun tas, tātis, f. f. [for vōlent-tos ; fr. vōlens, vōlent-is, "willing"] *Will, inclination, free-will. Wish, desire. Good-will, favour.*

vōlup-tas, tātis, f. [vōlup-e, according to one's desire or inclinations"] *Delight, pleasure.*

vox, vōcis, f. [for voc-s ; fr vōc-o, "to call"] *The voice. A word, speech, etc., as that which is spoken.*

vulg o, adv. [adverbial abl. of vulg-us, "the common people"] *Commonly, generally, everywhere.*

vulgus, i, m. and n *The multitude, or mass ; the common people, mob populace.*

vulnēr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [vulnus, vulnēr-is. "a wound"] *To wound.*

vuln-us, ēris, n. *A wound.*

vul-tus, tūs, m. [prob. vōl-o, "to wish"] *Expression of countenance, mien, looks. Face, countenance.*



to & from what must be
done in relation to the
hereditary general impression
with the right to be there.
The agent is always present
the above

The word "relation" is used
in the
definition of the term "relation" as
the relationship between the
the above
relation is the relationship
in the relationship between
the above and

There is a general relation
very often between the
first and last of the
person and the above. Some
is devoted to,

The word "relation" is
used in the above
relation is the relationship
distance between the
and relation is the relationship
or persons referred to is the
one last named & the first
named.
It is a general name

Latin for syllables

penult is the second last
syllable

antepenult third last syllable

ultimate last "

adducere duxi ducere ductum



